

INTERNATIONAL STUDENT EDITION

Reading & Vocabulary Development

3

Cause  
&  
Effect

FOURTH EDITION

CNN®

Patricia Ackert | Linda Lee

[IELTSMatters.com](http://IELTSMatters.com)

# Contents

<i>To the Instructor</i>	<i>v</i>
<i>Acknowledgments</i>	<i>ix</i>

## Unit 1 Explorers 1

Lesson 1	Burke and Wills: Across Australia	2
Lesson 2	Alexandra David-Neel: A French Woman in Tibet	10
Lesson 3	Vitus Bering: Across Siberia to North America	20
Lesson 4	Robert Scott: A Race to the South Pole	29
Lesson 5	Into the Deep: Ocean Exploration	40
Extension Activities		
	Video Highlights: CNN Video, <i>Deep Sea Exploration</i>	50
	Activity Page: Adventure Trail	52
	Dictionary Page: Understanding Definitions	53

## Unit 2 World Issues 55

Lesson 1	World Population Growth	56
Lesson 2	Changes in the Family	68
Lesson 3	Women and Change	78
Lesson 4	Rain Forests	88
Lesson 5	The Garbage Project	98
Extension Activities		
	Video Highlights: CNN Video, <i>Lalita's Story</i>	107
	Activity Page: Crossword Puzzle	109
	Dictionary Page: Working with Word Forms	110

## Unit 3 A Mishmash, or Hodgepodge 111

Lesson 1	Roadrunners	112
Lesson 2	Afraid to Fly	122
Lesson 3	Languages and Language Diversity	132
Lesson 4	Skyscrapers	143
Lesson 5	Left-Handedness	153
Extension Activities		
	Video Highlights: CNN Video, <i>The Green Skyscraper</i>	163
	Activity Page: Familiar Phrases	165
	Dictionary Page: Understanding Grammar Codes	166



## Unit 4 Science 167

---

Lesson 1	Biospheres in Space	168
Lesson 2	Earthquakes	177
Lesson 3	Snow and Hail	189
Lesson 4	Photovoltaic Cells: Energy Source of the Future	198
Lesson 5	Biological Clocks	209

### Extension Activities

Video Highlights: CNN Video, <i>Ozone Depletion</i>	220
Activity Page: Chemical Crossword Puzzle	222
Dictionary Page: Doing Dictionary Research	223



## Unit 5 Medicine and Health 225

---

Lesson 1	Headaches	226
Lesson 2	Sleep and Dreams	236
Lesson 3	Health Care and Epidemics	246
Lesson 4	Medicine: From Leeches to Lasers	258
Lesson 5	Cholesterol and Heart Disease	268

### Extension Activities

Video Highlights: CNN Video, <i>The Singing Doctor</i>	281
Activity Page: Who Said What?	283
Dictionary Page: Learning About Word Stress	285

<i>Vocabulary</i>	287
<i>Skills Index</i>	291



# Explorers

unit

# 1

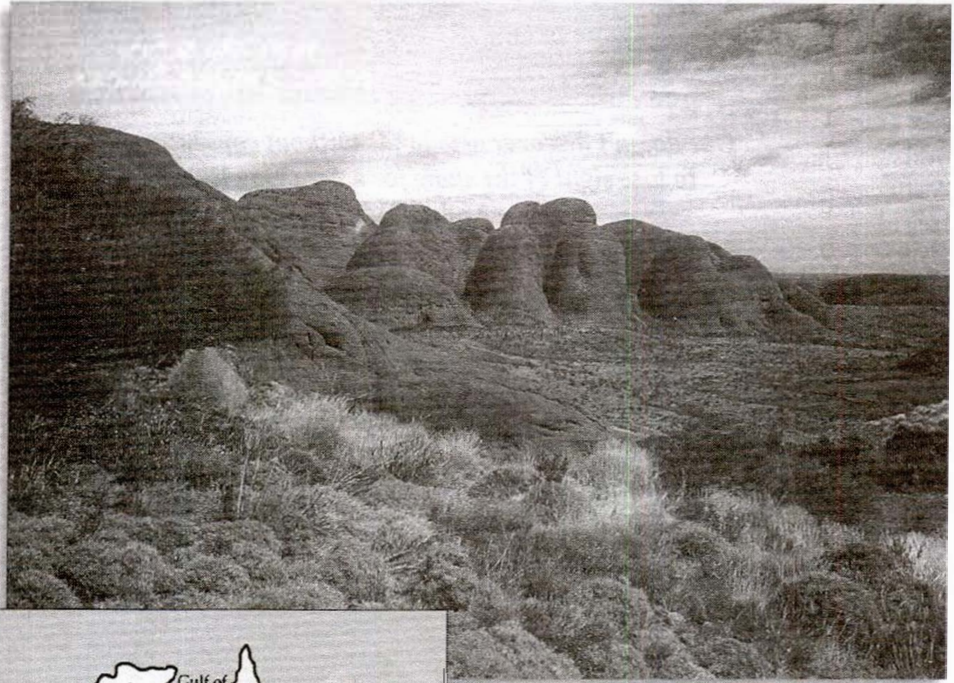
*One doesn't discover new lands without consenting  
to lose sight of the shore for a very long time.*

—André Gide

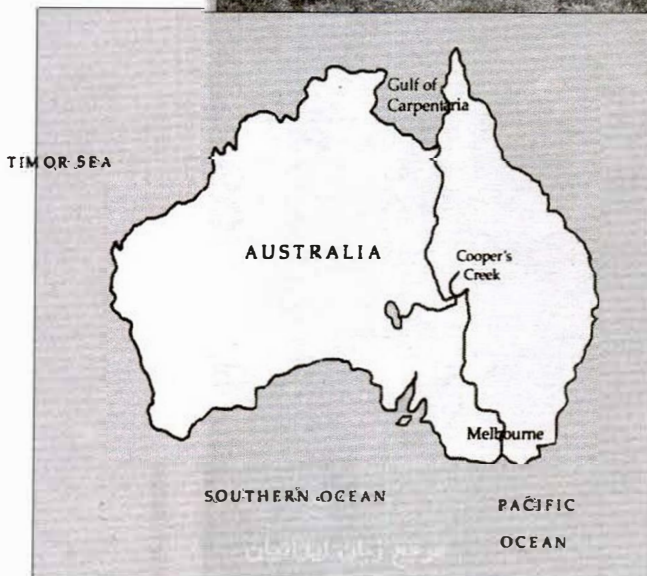




# Burke and Wills: Across Australia



© Howard Davies/CORBIS



## Before You Read

1. What information about Australia do the map and the photograph give you?
2. Is Australia larger or smaller than your country?
3. What else do you know about Australia?



# 1 Burke and Wills: Across Australia



Australia is a huge country, and the outback (the Australian word for the **interior** of the country) is desert. In some years, it rains only eight centimeters in the outback, but in other years, rainstorms **turn** the desert **into** sandy swamps.

inside; away from the coast

turn into = change (something); become

Until the eighteenth century, only **aborigines** lived in Australia. These are the first people who lived in Australia. When Europeans went there to live, they **built** towns on the coast. However, in the 1850s, people began thinking more about the interior.

In 1860, Robert O'Hara Burke, a police officer from Ireland, was **chosen** to lead an **expedition** across the continent from south to north. He took with him William John Wills and eleven other men, camels, horses, and enough **supplies** for a year and a half. They **left** Melbourne **for** the Gulf of Carpentaria on **August 20**, winter in the southern **hemisphere**.

past participle of *choose*

food and other necessary things

half of the Earth or any other sphere

The expedition had problems **from the beginning**. Burke had no experience in the outback. The men fought and **would** not follow **orders**. Twice they left some of their supplies **so that they could** move faster and later sent one of the men, William Wright, back for them.

commands; directions

**Finally**, a small group led by Burke moved on **ahead** of the others to a river named Cooper's Creek and **set up** their **base camp**. They were **halfway** across the continent, but it was summer now, with very hot weather and sandstorms.

at last

They waited a month for Wright, and then Burke **decided that** four from his small group, with **three months'** supplies, should travel the 1,250 kilometers to the north coast **as quickly as possible**. They told the others to wait for them at Cooper's Creek.

The journey across the desert was very difficult, but **at the end of** January, they **reached** the Flinders River





35 near the Gulf of Carpentaria. They started their return  
journey, but now it was the rainy season and traveling  
was slow and even more difficult than on their trip  
north. They did not have enough food, and the men  
became hungry and sick. Then one of them died. Some  
40 of the camels died or were killed for food.

Finally, on April 21, they arrived back at Cooper's  
Creek, only to find that no one was there. The rest of the  
expedition had left the day before because they thought  
Burke must be dead.

45 The men continued south, but without enough food,  
both Burke and Wills died. Aborigines helped the last  
man who was still alive, and a search party found him  
in September 1861. He was half crazy from hunger and  
loneliness.

a group of people  
who look for  
someone who is lost

50 There were many reasons that the expedition did not  
go as planned. It had an inexperienced leader, the men  
made bad decisions, some did not follow orders, and  
they did not get along. But it was the first expedition to  
cross Australia, and Burke and Wills are still known as  
55 heroes of exploration.

be friendly;  
not fight



## a Vocabulary

In this book, difficult words are repeated several times in the exercises. These words are also repeated and reviewed in other lessons. It is not necessary to list new English words with their meanings in your own language. You will learn them just by practicing. In each lesson, when you read the text the first time, underline the words you don't know. Then you can give yourself a test when you finish the lesson. Look at the words you underlined and see if you understand them. If you don't know them yet, this is the time to memorize them.

*In the Vocabulary exercises in this book, write the correct word in each blank. Use a word only once. Use capital letters where they are necessary.*

exploration	built	hemisphere	halfway
finally	orders	expedition	loneliness
aborigines	gets along	base	heroes

1. The captain of a ship gives \_\_\_\_\_, and the sailors must follow them.
2. In baseball, a player hits the ball and runs to first \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The first Australians are called \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Most of the Earth has been explored. Now we are in the age of space \_\_\_\_\_, searching for more information about the stars, the moon, and other planets besides Earth.
5. Kumiko \_\_\_\_\_ well with everyone. She is always nice and never fights with people.
6. We \_\_\_\_\_ our new home from the wood and stone on our land.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ is a common feeling when you are far from your friends and family.
8. Asia is in the northern \_\_\_\_\_.
9. The writer Jane Austen said, " \_\_\_\_\_ doings never prosper." I think she meant that it's important to complete things.
10. People who win in the Olympic Games are \_\_\_\_\_ in their countries.





## **b** Vocabulary

Do this exercise the same way you did Exercise a.

chosen	expedition	party	explored
build	interior	got along	finally
searching	supplies	swamps	turned into

1. Burke and Wills led an \_\_\_\_\_ into the interior of Australia.
2. The explorer Christopher Columbus was \_\_\_\_\_ for a new way to go to India.
3. Burke and Wills \_\_\_\_\_ the interior of Australia.
4. Birds like to live in \_\_\_\_\_ because there is a lot of water and food.
5. We use one kind of paint for the \_\_\_\_\_ of a house and another kind for the exterior.
6. After three days of driving, I \_\_\_\_\_ arrived at the coast.
7. A search \_\_\_\_\_ was sent to find the Burke and Wills expedition.
8. The president of the United States is \_\_\_\_\_ by the people who vote.
9. The secretary ordered paper, pens, and other \_\_\_\_\_ for the office.
10. Carlos started to study hard, and he eventually \_\_\_\_\_ a good student.



## **C** True/False

Write **T** if the sentence is true. Write **F** if it is false. If a sentence is false, change it to make it true or explain why it is false. An asterisk (\*) before an item means that the answer is either an *inference* or an *opinion*. You cannot find the answer in a sentence in the text. You have to think about the information in the text and things you already know and then decide on the answer.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The first Europeans in Australia built villages in the outback because there were too many aborigines on the coast.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. The Burke and Wills expedition crossed Australia from south to north.
- \_\_\_\_\_ \*3. December is a summer month in Australia.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Much of the interior of Australia is swampy all year long.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Eleven men crossed Australia with Burke and Wills.
- \_\_\_\_\_ \*6. Burke and Wills did not have enough food for their journey back to Cooper's Creek because the rain slowed them down.
- \_\_\_\_\_ \*7. The aborigines could help the last man still alive because they understood how to live in the desert.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Burke was a good leader for this expedition.

## **d** Comprehension Questions

Answer these questions in complete sentences. An asterisk (\*) means that the answer is either an *inference* or an *opinion*. You cannot find the exact answer in the text.

- 1. Where did the first Europeans live when they went to Australia?
- \*2. Why were camels good animals for this expedition?
- 3. Why did the men leave some of their supplies behind?
- 4. Why was it difficult to travel in the interior of Australia?
- 5. What happened to some of the camels?
- 6. Give two reasons why this expedition had so many problems.
- \*7. Do you think Burke and Wills should be called heroes of exploration? Why?





## **e** Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 4 (lines 18–22)?

- Robert Burke led this expedition.
- The expedition had many problems.
- Burke had no experience in the outback.

## **f** Two-Word Verbs

English has many two-word verbs. Each of the two words is easy, but when they are put together, they mean something different. There is often no way to guess what they mean. You have to learn each one.

*Learn these two-word verbs and then fill in the blanks with the right words. Use the correct verb form.*

turn into	=	change (something) into; become
get along (with)	=	not fight; be friendly
break down	=	stop going or working (often said about a car)
call on	=	ask (someone) to speak (as when a teacher asks a student to speak)
put away	=	put (something) in the place where it belongs

- Our washing machine \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday, and I couldn't finish washing my clothes.
- Tommy and his little brother don't \_\_\_\_\_ very well. They fight about something almost every day.
- Ali knew the answer when the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ him.
- It was rainy this morning, but now it has \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful day.
- Mary doesn't usually \_\_\_\_\_ her clothes. She just leaves them on a chair or the bed.



## g

### Articles: A, An, The

There are so many rules about articles that it is easier just to get used to them by practicing than to learn all the rules. However, you will learn a few of the rules later in this book.

*Here are some sentences or parts of sentences from the text. Put an article in the blank if it is necessary.*

1. In other years, rainstorms turn \_\_\_\_\_ desert into sandy swamps.
2. Until \_\_\_\_\_ eighteenth century, only aborigines lived in Australia.
3. In 1860, \_\_\_\_\_ Robert O'Hara Burke, \_\_\_\_\_ police officer from Ireland, was chosen to lead \_\_\_\_\_ expedition across \_\_\_\_\_ continent from south to north.
4. He took with him William John Wills and eleven other men, \_\_\_\_\_ camels, \_\_\_\_\_ horses, and enough supplies for \_\_\_\_\_ year and \_\_\_\_\_ half.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ expedition had problems from \_\_\_\_\_ beginning.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ men fought and would not follow \_\_\_\_\_ orders.

## h

### Guided Writing

*Write one of these two short compositions.*

1. You are the last person still alive from the Burke and Wills expedition. It is September 1861, and the search party has just found you. Tell them what happened to you.
2. You are the leader of another expedition across Australia. Explain what you will do differently.



# Alexandra David-Neel: A French Woman in Tibet



## Before You Read

1. What do you know about the history and geography of Tibet?
2. What information does the photograph give you about Alexandra David-Neel?
3. Alexandra David-Neel traveled alone to Tibet in the early twentieth century. What do you think her goal was?





## Context Clues

It is not necessary to look up every new word in the dictionary. You can often tell what a word means from the sentence it is in or from the sentences after it. For example, the word **aborigines** in line 6 on page 3 is explained in the next sentence. Take a look. What are aborigines? Always look for context clues when you are reading. Try not to look up every new word in your dictionary.

*The words in bold print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means. Do all of the Context Clues exercises in the book this way.*

1. David-Neel was very unhappy when she was a child. She **escaped** her unhappiness by reading books on adventure and travel.
2. Later, she studied the Buddhist religion and wrote **articles** and books about it.
3. In 1903, she started working as a **journalist**, writing articles about Asia and Buddhism for English and French magazines and newspapers.
4. She wrote her husband long letters full of **details** about her travels.
5. For centuries, Tibet was a **secret** and mysterious place to the rest of the world. Only a few foreigners were able to visit the area.



## 2 Alexandra David-Neel: A French Woman in Tibet



Tibet has been a **secret** and mysterious place to the rest of the world for several centuries. It is on a high plateau in Asia, **surrounded** by even higher mountains, and only a few foreigners were able to cross its **borders** until recently.

legal lines between countries

5 One of these foreigners was a French woman named Alexandra David-Neel (1868–1969). She traveled by herself in India, China, and Tibet. She studied the Buddhist religion, wrote **articles** and books about it, and collected ancient Buddhist books. She also became  
10 a Buddhist herself.

David-Neel always said she had an unhappy **childhood**. She **escaped** her unhappiness by reading books on adventure and travel. She **ran away** from school several times and even ran away to England  
15 when she was only 16.

left without telling anyone

She was a singer for several years, but in 1903 she started working as a **journalist**, writing articles about Asia and Buddhism for English and French magazines and newspapers. The next year, when she was 37, she married  
20 Philippe-François Neel. It was an unusual marriage. After five days together, they moved to different cities and never lived together again. Yet he **supported** her all his life, and she wrote him hundreds of long letters full of **details** about her travels.

gave (her) money to live on

25 She traveled all over Europe and North Africa, but she went to India in 1911 to study Buddhism, and then her **real** travels began. She traveled in India and also in Nepal and Sikkim, the small countries north of India in the Himalaya Mountains, but her goal was Tibet. She  
30 continued to study Buddhism and learned to speak Tibetan. She traveled to villages and religious centers, with only an interpreter and a few men to carry her camping equipment. For several months, she lived in a **cave** in Sikkim and studied Buddhism and the Tibetan



cave



35 language. Then she **adopted** a 15-year-old Sikkimese boy to travel with her. He **remained** with her until his death at the age of 55.

For the next seven years, she traveled in **remote** areas of China. These were years of **civil war** in China, and she was often in danger. She traveled for thousands of kilometers on horseback with only a few men to help her—through desert heat and sandstorms and the rain, snow, and freezing **temperatures** of the colder areas.

45 In 1924, David-Neel was 56 years old. She darkened her skin and dressed as an old **beggar**. She carried only a beggar's bowl and a backpack and traveled through hot lowlands and snowy mountain passes until she reached the border of Tibet. Because she spoke Tibetan so well, she was able to cross the border and reach the famous city of Lhasa without anyone knowing that she was European and forbidden to be there. It was often freezing cold, and sometimes there wasn't enough food. Sometimes she was sick, and once she nearly died. This was the most dangerous of all her journeys, but she reached her goal and collected more information about Tibetan Buddhism.

She returned to France in 1925. She spent several years writing about her **research** and adventures and translating ancient Tibetan religious books. When she was 66, she returned to China and the Tibetan border area for ten years. In 1944, the Second World War reached even that remote area, and at the age of 76, she walked for days, sometimes without food, until she was able to reach a place from which she could fly to India and then home to France. She continued writing and translating until she died, just seven weeks before her 101st birthday.

Most explorers traveled to discover and map new places. David-Neel went to do research on Buddhism. She said that freedom was the most important thing in life for her, and, **like** many other explorers, she lived a dangerous, exciting, free life.

stayed

far from towns

war between people  
in the same country



beggar

search for new  
information

similar to





## **a** Vocabulary

Write the correct word in each blank. Use a word only once, and use capital letters if they are necessary.

civil war	temperature	like	border
childhood	article	secret	beggars
caves	journalist	remote	remained

1. We didn't tell him about his birthday party. We wanted it to be a \_\_\_\_\_.
2. There is an interesting \_\_\_\_\_ in the newspaper today about Tibet.
3. You can find \_\_\_\_\_ asking for money in most countries.
4. She lived in Asia when she was an adult, but she spent her \_\_\_\_\_ in England.
5. Some ancient North Americans lived in \_\_\_\_\_. Others built houses.
6. Normal body \_\_\_\_\_ is 98.6 degrees Fahrenheit.
7. She went to India in 1911 and \_\_\_\_\_ there for several years.
8. In the United States, the northern states and the southern states fought a \_\_\_\_\_ that lasted from 1861 to 1865.
9. The Himalayas are on the \_\_\_\_\_ between China and India.
10. A \_\_\_\_\_ collects information and then writes articles about it for magazines and newspapers.

## **b** Vocabulary

Remember to underline the words you don't know as you read the text, and then test yourself when you finish the lesson.

remote	escaped	like	real
details	surrounded	support	journalist
adopted	research	borders	ran away from

1. Everyone calls her Ellie, but her \_\_\_\_\_ name is Elizabeth.
2. Our house is cool in hot weather because it is \_\_\_\_\_ by big trees.



3. Nepal, \_\_\_\_\_ Tibet, is in the Himalaya Mountains.
4. Mr. and Mrs. Thompson \_\_\_\_\_ a baby because they couldn't have children of their own.
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ school when he was 15 years old and joined the navy.
6. Most English paragraphs have a main idea and supporting \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Parents usually \_\_\_\_\_ their children until the children finish school. The parents pay for everything the children need.
8. Dr. Garcia is doing \_\_\_\_\_ for space exploration.
9. Her friends live in a \_\_\_\_\_ part of Alaska. The only way to get there is by plane.
10. A snake \_\_\_\_\_ from the zoo last night. If you see it, call the police immediately.

## **C** Multiple Choice

*Circle the letter of the best answer. An asterisk (\*) means that the answer is an inference or opinion. You cannot find the answer in a sentence in the text.*

1. Alexandra David-Neel went to Asia to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. study Buddhism
  - b. lead an expedition
  - c. adopt a son
2. When she was a child, she read to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. become a Buddhist
  - b. escape her unhappiness
  - c. learn about Europe
3. After she got married, \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. she lived in Europe with her husband for several years
  - b. her husband supported her
  - c. her husband traveled in Europe with her
- \*4. It is possible that she \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. took photographs during her travels
  - b. had a car when she lived in a cave
  - c. spoke Tibetan to her Indian friends



5. The place she wanted most to visit was \_\_\_\_\_.
- India
  - China
  - Tibet
6. Her travels in China were dangerous because \_\_\_\_\_.
- there was a civil war
  - she was traveling on horseback
  - she was a beggar
7. David-Neel said that \_\_\_\_\_.
- she wasn't afraid of danger
  - freedom was very important to her
  - she wanted her husband to travel with her

## **d** Comprehension Questions

*Always answer the comprehension questions with complete sentences.*

- Why is Tibet a mysterious place?
- \*2. Why did David-Neel run away from school?
- What is a journalist?
- What was unusual about her marriage?
- What did she do when she was living in a cave?
- What does *remote areas* mean?
- Why didn't the Tibetans know she was a foreigner?
- What kind of work did she do after her last trip?
- \*9. Do you think she lived a free life? Why?

## **e** Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 3 (lines 11–15)?

- David-Neel read books on travel and adventure.
- David-Neel ran away from school several times.
- David-Neel had an unhappy childhood.





**f**

**Word Forms**

Choose a word form from line 1 of the chart to use in sentence 1, and so on. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns. There are empty spaces on the chart because there are not four forms for every word.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	adopt	adoption	adopted	
2.	surround	surroundings	surrounding	
3.	beg	beggar		
4.		hero	heroic	heroically
5.	remain	remainder remains	remaining	
6.	supply	supply	supplied	
7.	explore	exploration		
8.	secrete	secret	secretive	secretly
9.		reality	real	really
10.	choose	choice	choice	

- Many \_\_\_\_\_ children want to meet their **birth parents**.
- Dan drove so fast on his vacation trip that he hardly saw his \_\_\_\_\_.
- Small children often \_\_\_\_\_ to go with their parents when the parents go out at night.
- Jumping into the freezing water to save the child was a \_\_\_\_\_ action.
- They ate half the chicken and put the \_\_\_\_\_ in the refrigerator for the next day.
- The company was unable to \_\_\_\_\_ most of the things we ordered.
- Are you more interested in the \_\_\_\_\_ of outer space or the Earth's oceans?



8. I don't know why my children are being so \_\_\_\_\_ today.  
Usually they like to tell me where they are going.
9. Can you help me? I'm \_\_\_\_\_ having trouble with  
this computer.
10. I can't decide which movie to see. You make the \_\_\_\_\_.



## Articles

**A** and **an** are used to show that the noun after it is one of a group.

John Burke was **an** explorer. (He was one of many explorers throughout history.)

Maria is **a** student. (She is one of many students in the world.)

I took **an** apple out of the refrigerator. (It is one of many apples in the world.)

**The** is used to show that the noun is one special, particular, specific case of the noun or nouns.

John Burke and William John Wills were **the** first explorers to cross Australia.

Maria is **the** best student in the class.

I took **the** apple out of the refrigerator. (There was only one apple in the refrigerator.)

*Put the right article in the blanks.*

1. Australia is \_\_\_\_\_ huge country.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ journalist who wrote this article is a friend of mine.
3. David-Neel was \_\_\_\_\_ journalist.
4. Please close \_\_\_\_\_ door.
5. Her office is \_\_\_\_\_ first one on the left.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ professor called you today, but I don't know who it was.
7. Who was \_\_\_\_\_ worst teacher you ever had?





## Compound Words

Compound words are common in English. They are two words put together, and the meaning of the compound word is related to the meanings of the two words. They are not like two-word verbs, whose meaning is different from the meaning of each word by itself.

*Put these compound words in the right blanks in the sentences below.*

horseback	sandstorm	snowstorm	keyhole
mailbox	sidewalk	doorbell	weekend

1. Barbara couldn't drive to her parents' house last week because there was a bad \_\_\_\_\_, and it was very cold.
2. Abdullah looks in his \_\_\_\_\_ every day, and he usually finds a letter.
3. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a place for people to walk at the side of the street.
4. When you unlock a door, you put your key in the \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ rang, and Susan went to open the door.
6. Did you ever go \_\_\_\_\_ riding?



## Guided Writing

*Write one of these two short compositions.*

1. You are Alexandra David-Neel. Write a letter to your husband. Describe one or two of your adventures in some detail. Add your own ideas about what you saw, heard, tasted, touched, or smelled.
2. Describe an adventure you had or an unusual trip you took. Use details about what you saw, heard, tasted, touched, or smelled.

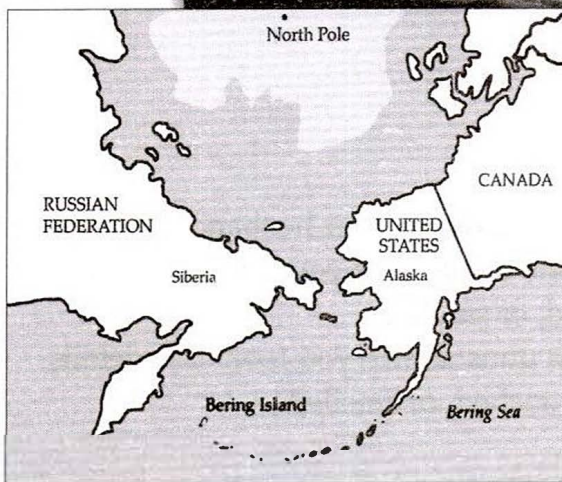




# Vitus Bering: Across Siberia to North America



© Jacques Langevin/CORBIS SYGMA



## Before You Read

1. How can you get from Siberia to Alaska?
2. What is the name of the body of water between Siberia and Alaska?
3. Which are longer in Siberia and Alaska, winters or summers?



## Context Clues

You can often guess the meaning of a word from the sentence, even if the sentence doesn't explain the word exactly. For example, in this lesson, one sentence says, "They lost a lot of food when one of the ships **sank** in a storm." What could a storm do to a ship so that the food was lost? The ship probably went down into the water to the bottom of the ocean. When you can guess easily what a word means from the sentence, don't look up the word in your dictionary.

*Now practice with these new words from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each **bold** word means.*

1. Vitus Bering wanted to explore the east coast of Siberia and to find out if Asia and North America were **joined**.
2. Bering made careful plans for his trip, but there were many **delays**. Because of this, he had only one summer to explore the area instead of two years.
3. Bering's expedition **gathered** important scientific information about the interior of Siberia.
4. When scientists read Bering's reports, they **realized** that he was a great explorer.
5. The water between Siberia and Alaska is now called the Bering Sea to **remind** us of this great explorer.



## 3

# Vitus Bering: Across Siberia to North America



In 1733, the most complete scientific expedition in history up to that time left St. Petersburg, Russia. The goal of the expedition was to explore the east coast of Siberia and to find out if Asia and North America were

5 **joined**. The scientists planned to report on everything: the **geography**, climate, plants, animals, and customs and languages of the Siberian people.

connected

the way parts of a place are positioned within it

to

The expedition had to cross Siberia **in order to** reach the Pacific Ocean. Vitus Bering, the leader of the whole

10 expedition, left St. Petersburg with almost 600 people.

The group **included** a few scientists, **skilled** workers of all kinds, **soldiers**, and sailors. Alexei Chirikov left later, with most of the scientists and **tons** of supplies.

had in it

people in the military

unit of measurement; in the U.S., 2,000 pounds = 1 ton

It took seven years for Bering's and Chirikov's groups

15 to cross Siberia. They traveled mostly in flat-bottomed boats on the rivers. Bering's group spent a year in Tobolsk, where they built a ship and explored the Ob River. They continued to Yakutsk, where they spent four years. Yakutsk was only a small village and there were

20 many people in the expedition, so they had to build their own buildings. They also built boats and explored the Lena River. Then they moved on to Okhotsk on the eastern coast. It took two more years to build ships so that they could explore and map the east coast.

25 Bering made careful plans, but there were always problems. For example, they lost a lot of their food when one of the ships sank in a storm. But finally, their two ships started for North America. They had only one summer instead of two years for their explorations

30 because of the many problems and **delays**. And summers are short in the north.

There was more bad luck. There were storms, and the two ships lost contact, but at last the sailors on





Bering's ship saw mountains a short distance across the  
35 sea. This **proved** that North America and Asia were two  
**separate** continents.

different

Their problems continued. Their water supply was  
low, but when the men went **ashore** in Alaska, they got  
water that was a little salty. Many of the men were sick  
40 from scurvy, a disease caused by the **lack** of vitamin C.  
When they drank the salty water, they became even  
sicker. Then they started dying, one after another.

not having enough

As the ship sailed south, back toward Okhotsk, it  
became lost in storms. Finally, a storm drove it onto a  
45 small island, and the men knew their ship could not sail  
again. They were in a place with no trees, but there were  
birds and animals for food, and **fresh** water to drink.  
However, it was too late for many of them. Men  
continued to die from scurvy, and on December 8, 1741,  
50 Bering died and was buried on the island that is now  
named for him. When spring came, the few remaining  
men were able to build a small ship from the wood in  
the old one and leave the island.

By this time, the Russian government had lost interest  
55 in the North Pacific. Bering's reports were sent back to St.  
Petersburg and forgotten. **Decades** later, people **realized**  
that Bering was a great explorer. His expedition **gathered**  
important scientific information about the interior of  
Siberia, made maps of the eastern coast, and discovered a  
60 new part of North America. Today, we have the Bering  
Sea between Siberia and Alaska to **remind** us of the  
leader of this great scientific expedition.

periods of ten years

make (us)  
remember





## a Vocabulary

joined realize included separate gather delay  
prove geography remind soldiers lack tons

1. The dancers got in a circle and \_\_\_\_\_ hands.
2. Did you study the \_\_\_\_\_ of your country in school?
3. Mr. and Mrs. Baker drive to work in \_\_\_\_\_ cars because they work in different places.
4. Please \_\_\_\_\_ me to buy some bread, or I might forget.
5. In some restaurants, the waiter's or waitress's tip is \_\_\_\_\_ in the bill. In others, you leave it separately.
6. Two \_\_\_\_\_ equals 4,000 U.S. pounds.
7. There will be a short \_\_\_\_\_ because the chemistry professor needs to get the equipment ready.
8. He didn't \_\_\_\_\_ what time it was, and he got to class late.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ have to wear uniforms and follow orders.
10. Burke's expedition failed partly because of his \_\_\_\_\_ of experience in the Australian outback.

## b Vocabulary

proved delay decade in order to includes gathered  
ashore fresh skilled separate vitamin reminder

1. Ali is studying English \_\_\_\_\_ go to an American university.
2. Early explorers \_\_\_\_\_ that the Earth was round and not flat.
3. Ann \_\_\_\_\_ up her books and papers and left the library.
4. Scurvy is caused by a lack of \_\_\_\_\_ C. It was a problem on long ocean trips because sailors didn't have fruit and vegetables to eat.
5. Haiti and the Dominican Republic are parts of the same island, but they are \_\_\_\_\_ countries.
6. A century is 100 years. A \_\_\_\_\_ is 10 years.
7. Electricians and mechanics are \_\_\_\_\_ workers.
8. After a half hour in the water, the children walked \_\_\_\_\_ and dried off.



9. People cannot drink sea water. They need \_\_\_\_\_ water.  
 10. This book \_\_\_\_\_ a table of contents and a map.

## **C** Vocabulary Review: Definitions

Match the words with their meaning. Write the letter of the definition from the second column in the correct blank.

- |                      |                               |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| _____ 1. hemisphere  | a. not fight                  |
| _____ 2. border      | b. study                      |
| _____ 3. remain      | c. at last                    |
| _____ 4. get along   | d. inside                     |
| _____ 5. research    | e. half of the earth          |
| _____ 6. interior    | f. isolated                   |
| _____ 7. finally     | g. line between two countries |
| _____ 8. remote      | h. writer for magazines       |
| _____ 9. turn into   | i. become                     |
| _____ 10. journalist | j. stay                       |

## **d** True/False/Not Enough Information

Write **T** if the sentence is true, **F** if it is false, and **NI** if there is not enough information in the text for you to decide. Change the false sentences to make them true, or explain why they are false. Do all of the **True/False** exercises in the lessons this way.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Bering left St. Petersburg ahead of Chirikov.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 2. It took them seven years to cross Siberia because they were traveling on horseback.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Vitus Bering was from St. Petersburg.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Bering spent two years exploring the east coast of Siberia.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ \*5. Bering's and Burke's expeditions were similar.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Bering's men found Eskimos in Alaska.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Scurvy is caused by a lack of vitamin C.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Alaska belonged to the United States at the time of Bering's expedition.



## Comprehension Questions

*Paraphrase your answers. This means that you should answer the questions in your own words instead of using the exact words from the text.*

1. Why was Bering's trip called a scientific expedition?
2. What did the men on the expedition do in Tobolsk?
3. Where did they stay longer, in Tobolsk or in Yakutsk?
- \*4. Why did the expedition have to build boats?
5. How did the two ships lose contact in the Pacific Ocean?
6. Why did the men on the island continue to die even when they had food and water?
- \*7. Is scurvy a problem on ships today? Why or why not?
- \*8. When Bering's expedition returned to St. Petersburg, were they welcomed as national heroes? Why or why not?

## Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 3 (lines 14–19)?

- a. It took seven years to cross Siberia.
- b. The expedition explored two rivers.
- c. The expedition built their own village in Yakutsk.

## g Reading

How carefully should you read something? How fast should you read? The answer depends on what you are reading. Sometimes you need to read things slowly and carefully. At other times, you can read quickly, and at still other times, you can read at an average speed.

*How would you read each thing below? Check (✓) the box for slowly and carefully, at an average speed, or quickly.*

	Slowly and Carefully	At an Average Speed	Quickly
1. A letter from your parents	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2. A letter from your bank	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>



	Slowly and Carefully	At an Average Speed	Quickly
3. The textbook for a difficult science class	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4. An exciting mystery story	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5. The directions on an important exam	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6. A magazine article about an interesting person	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Some students like to read the whole text quickly to get the general idea. Others like to start at the beginning and read each sentence carefully. You can choose the best way for you to start reading a lesson. After that, you probably need to read the lesson two or three more times. When you come to a word you don't know, read the sentence again or even three times, to help you remember the word. It is never necessary to memorize sentences or paragraphs. That is not the way to study reading.

If the text is very difficult for you, read the first paragraph two or three times, then the second, and so on. Then read the whole text from beginning to end. Then you might want to read it all again.

You will probably want to read the complete text again after you have finished the whole lesson. Then test yourself on the vocabulary words that you underlined when you first read the text and learn the words you don't know.

## **h** Word Forms: Verbs

Every sentence must have a verb. How do you know which form of a verb to use? There are often clues that tell you what form of the verb to use.

*Put the right form of the verb in each blank. Explain why you chose each form.*

1. Did Bering (lead) \_\_\_\_\_ an expedition across Siberia?
2. The expedition (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ St. Petersburg in 1733.
3. Bob is (study) \_\_\_\_\_ about explorers.
4. Nadia has (learn) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of words this week.
5. Can you (help) \_\_\_\_\_ me with this exercise?
6. The teacher (give) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of homework every day.
7. Mr. Gordon was (sleep) \_\_\_\_\_ at midnight last night.
8. They are going to (travel) \_\_\_\_\_ in Europe next summer.





## Prepositions

The best way to learn how to use the right preposition is by practicing. Write the prepositions in these sentences from the text.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 1733, the most complete scientific expedition in history \_\_\_\_\_ that time left St. Petersburg.
2. The scientists planned to report \_\_\_\_\_ everything.
3. The expedition had to cross Siberia \_\_\_\_\_ order \_\_\_\_\_ reach the Pacific Ocean.
4. Vitus Bering, the leader \_\_\_\_\_ the whole expedition, left St. Petersburg \_\_\_\_\_ almost 600 people.
5. They traveled mostly \_\_\_\_\_ flat-bottomed boats \_\_\_\_\_ the rivers.
6. They had only one summer instead \_\_\_\_\_ two years \_\_\_\_\_ their explorations because \_\_\_\_\_ the many problems and delays.
7. At last, the sailors \_\_\_\_\_ Bering's ship saw mountains a short distance \_\_\_\_\_ the sea.
8. They were \_\_\_\_\_ a place \_\_\_\_\_ no trees, but there were birds and animals \_\_\_\_\_ food.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ this time, the Russian government had lost interest \_\_\_\_\_ the North Pacific.
10. It discovered a new part \_\_\_\_\_ North America.

## Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

1. You are one of the men who left the island in the spring of 1742. Tell what happened to you during the decade from 1733 to 1743. Give a few details.
2. The reading does not say what happened to the people on Chirikov's ship after the two ships lost contact. What do you think happened to them?



# Robert Scott: A Race to the South Pole

lesson

# 4



## Before You Read

1. What does this photograph tell you about the geography of the South Pole?
2. What would you need in order to explore the South Pole?
3. What problems might explorers in the South Pole have?



## Context Clues

The words in **bold print** below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

1. Robert Scott led an expedition to Antarctica for a scientific **organization** called the Royal Geographical Society.
2. On earlier expeditions, when the dogs became **weak**, the men killed them for food.
3. Scott had the bad luck of having **extremely** bad weather. It was often  $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$  (minus 40 degrees Celsius).
4. Scott and his men spent the winter near the ocean. They used sleds to carry supplies farther **inland**.
5. The men became **exhausted** and had difficulty pulling their sleds.

## 4 Robert Scott: A Race to the South Pole



The first person to reach the South Pole was Roald Amundsen, a Norwegian. Robert Scott, who was English, arrived at the South Pole a month after Amundsen and died on the return journey to his ship. Yet, strangely

5 enough, Scott became a hero, but Amundsen did not.

Captain Robert Scott (1868–1912) was an officer in the English navy. From 1901 to 1904, he led an expedition to Antarctica for a British scientific **organization** called the Royal Geographical Society.

10 His group traveled farther south than anyone else had ever done. He gathered information on rocks, weather, and climate, and he made maps. When he returned to England, he was a national hero.



A few years later, Scott decided to organize another  
15 expedition. He said that he wanted to make a complete  
scientific study of Antarctica, but his real goal was to be  
the first person at the South Pole. He took three doctors,  
several scientists, and a number of other men with him.

Scott's group sailed on a ship named the *Terra Nova*  
20 in June 1910. When they reached Australia, they learned  
that Amundsen was also on his way to the Pole.

Amundsen and Scott were very different from each  
other, and they made very different plans. Amundsen  
planned everything very carefully. He took sleds and  
25 dog teams, as the great Arctic explorers did. Scott took  
ponies (small horses) and a few dogs, but he planned to  
have his men pull the sleds themselves for most of the  
trip. On earlier expeditions, as some dogs became **weak**,  
the men killed them for food for themselves and the  
30 other dogs. Amundsen did this too, and it helped him  
reach the Pole, but later people called him "dog eater."  
Scott would not eat his dogs, and this was one reason he  
died on this expedition.

There were other differences between the two  
35 expeditions. Amundsen sailed 100 kilometers closer to the  
Pole than Scott did. Scott also had the bad luck of having  
**extremely** bad weather—days of **blizzards** and strong  
winds. It was often  $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$  (minus 40 degrees Celsius).  
storms with wind  
and snow

Scott and his men built a base camp near the ocean's  
40 **edge** and spent the winter there. They used sleds and  
ponies to carry a ton of supplies farther **inland** to a  
place that they named the One Ton Depot. When spring  
came, a few of the men started ahead of the others with  
motorized sleds to leave supplies along the way.  
toward the interior  
45 However, after only a few days, the motorized sleds  
**broke down**, and the men had to pull them.

A few days later, Scott started for the South Pole  
with a few men. The whole journey was very difficult.  
Scott and his men either walked through deep snow or  
50 skied over ice and **uneven** ground. The climate was too  
difficult for the ponies, and they all died. There were  
frequent snowstorms. Sometimes the men couldn't  
leave their tents for several days because of blizzards.  
not flat





When Scott was 260 kilometers from the Pole, he  
55 sent all but four men back to the base camp. This was  
probably his most serious **mistake**. His tent was big  
enough for only four people, and he had only enough  
food and **fuel** for four. Somehow he had to **provide for**  
60 four people plus himself. Also, one man had left his skis  
behind with some of the supplies. He had to walk in the  
snow, and this slowed down the whole group.

take care of

On January 17, 1912, Scott and his men reached the  
Pole, only to find a tent and the Norwegian flag. They  
were not the first people to reach the South Pole. They  
65 had lost the race.

The next day, they started the 1,300-kilometer journey  
back to their base camp, pulling their heavy sleds full of  
supplies. The trip back was worse than the trip to the  
Pole. They became weak from hunger. **At times**, the  
70 whiteness everywhere made them **blind**. Their fingers  
and toes began to freeze, and two of the men fell and  
injured themselves. They didn't have enough fuel to keep  
warm in their tent. They became **exhausted** and had  
more and more difficulty pulling their sleds.

sometimes  
not able to see

75 Finally, one man died. Then another became so weak  
that he knew he was **endangering** the lives of the  
others. One night, he left the tent and never returned.  
He walked out into the blizzard to die instead of  
holding back the other three.

causing danger to

80 Every day, Scott described the terrible journey in his  
diary. On March 21, the three remaining men were only  
twenty kilometers from the One Ton Depot, but another  
blizzard kept them in their tent. On March 29, they were  
still unable to leave their tent. On that day, Scott wrote  
85 his last words in his diary.

A search party found the three **bodies** eight months  
later. They also found Scott's diary, excellent  
photographs of the expedition, and letters to take back  
to England. The search party left the frozen bodies  
90 where they found them.

Today, the base camp building is still there. Inside  
are supplies, furniture, and the men's **belongings**. They  
have been left just the way they were when Scott's



expedition was there. New Zealand takes care of the  
95 building and its contents.

Robert Scott's name **lives on** in stories of his trip to Antarctica, the last part of the Earth that people explored. He was not the first to reach the South Pole, but he is remembered as one of the great heroes of exploration.

continues to live

## Vocabulary

organization	body	weak	inland
edge	blizzard	broke down	exhausted
blind	extremely	fuel	at times

1. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a storm with wind and snow.
2. He put the glass too close to the \_\_\_\_\_ of the table, and it fell off.
3. A baby has more bones in her \_\_\_\_\_ than an adult has.  
That's because many of our bones grow together as we age.
4. People who grow up near the sea are often unhappy if they have to move \_\_\_\_\_.
5. A \_\_\_\_\_ person cannot see.
6. It's very cold in northern Canada, but at the North Pole it's \_\_\_\_\_ cold.
7. His car \_\_\_\_\_, and he had to walk five miles to get home.
8. \_\_\_\_\_, Burke rode horseback. At other times, he walked.
9. People need \_\_\_\_\_ to cook and to heat their homes.
10. The United Nations is an important international \_\_\_\_\_.



## **b** Vocabulary

weak	provided	inland	exhausted
broke down	lives on	uneven	mistake
belongings	edge	endangered	bodies

1. It was a \_\_\_\_\_ to drive into the city. There were so many cars on the road that we were an hour late for the meeting.
2. When I am traveling, I keep my \_\_\_\_\_ in a suitcase.
3. If you don't eat for several days, you will probably feel quite \_\_\_\_\_.
4. When I was a child, my parents \_\_\_\_\_ me with everything I needed.
5. The floor is so \_\_\_\_\_ that we can't put a table on it.
6. Ali stayed up all night to study for a test, and in the morning he was \_\_\_\_\_.
7. She \_\_\_\_\_ her own life when she jumped off the boat.
8. A famous person's name often \_\_\_\_\_ in books and articles.
9. Is the city of Boston on the coast or \_\_\_\_\_?
10. The \_\_\_\_\_ of a knife is very sharp.

## **c** Vocabulary Review: Antonyms

*Match each word in the left column with its opposite in the right column.*

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| _____ 1. remote    | a. take apart      |
| _____ 2. leave     | b. exterior        |
| _____ 3. get along | c. close to a city |
| _____ 4. join      | d. fight           |
| _____ 5. run away  | e. together        |
| _____ 6. include   | f. having          |
| _____ 7. uneven    | g. leave out       |
| _____ 8. separate  | h. remain          |
| _____ 9. interior  | i. come back       |
| _____ 10. lacking  | j. smooth          |



## **d** Multiple Choice

1. The first person to reach the South Pole was \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. English
  - b. French
  - c. Norwegian
2. Scott was mainly interested in \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. being the first person at the South Pole
  - b. collecting information about the rocks in Antarctica
  - c. learning about the weather and climate in Antarctica
- \*3. Amundsen's expedition ate dogs because \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. this is a custom in Norway
  - b. it was a way for the men to have fresh meat
  - c. there was no other food
- \*4. Scott's expedition had to travel \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. a shorter distance than Amundsen's
  - b. the same distance as Amundsen's
  - c. farther than Amundsen's
- \*5. January is a \_\_\_\_\_ month in Antarctica.
  - a. summer
  - b. fall
  - c. winter
6. Scott's trip to the Pole was difficult. The trip back was \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. more difficult
  - b. about the same
  - c. much easier
- \*7. Scott and his men became exhausted because \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. they didn't have enough fuel and could never get warm
  - b. the sun on the snow blinded them
  - c. they didn't have enough food and had to pull heavy sleds
8. We know the details about Scott's expedition because \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. he sent reports back to the English government
  - b. he kept a diary and the search party found it
  - c. he wrote detailed letters back to England





## e Comprehension Questions

- \*1. Scott and Burke led expeditions in very different climates. What was similar about their expeditions?
2. Explain one serious mistake that Scott made.
- \*3. Why did Scott travel from his base camp to the Pole in January?
4. Why did one man walk out of the tent into the blizzard and not return?
5. Why was it difficult for the men to pull the sleds on the trip back from the Pole?
6. Why couldn't the three men travel the last twenty kilometers to the One Ton Depot?
- \*7. Was Scott a hero of exploration? Give a reason for your answer.

## f Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 7 (lines 39–46)?

- a. moving supplies inland
- b. getting ready to ski to the South Pole
- c. bad luck with motorized sleds

## g Word Forms: Nouns

There are three parts of a sentence that always have a noun (or a pronoun): the subject, the object of the verb, and the object of a preposition.

Subject	Verb	Object of the verb	Object of a preposition
David-Neel	rode	a horse	to Tibet.
The expedition	took	food	for the animals.
A storm	drove	the ship	onto an island.

The subject is usually at the beginning of a sentence. The object of the verb is usually right after the verb. It answers the question "What?" The object of a preposition comes after the preposition. There might be adjectives and other words that describe these nouns:

**David-Neel** rode a large black **horse** to **Tibet**.

The large scientific **expedition** took a lot of **food** for the **animals**.

A bad **storm** drove the large sailing **ship** onto a small **island**.



Choose a word form from line 1 of the chart to use in sentence 1, and so on. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns. There are empty spaces on the chart because there are not four forms for every word.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	include	inclusion	inclusive	inclusively
2.	separate	separation	separate	separately
3.	exhaust	exhaustion	exhausting	
4.	realize	realization		
5.	remind	reminder		
6.	inform	information	(un)informative	(un)informatively
7.	organize	organization	organizational	organizationally
8.	weaken	weakness	weak	weakly

1. Did you \_\_\_\_\_ a description of your new friend when you wrote to your family?
2. Write your two compositions on \_\_\_\_\_ pieces of paper.
3. He spent a long time in the desert. He suffered from heat \_\_\_\_\_.
4. After Ms. Cook got home, she \_\_\_\_\_ that she had forgotten to mail her letters.
5. Ms. Barber put a \_\_\_\_\_ on the refrigerator for her children to do their homework.
6. Kumiko asked the teacher for \_\_\_\_\_ about the city buses. The teacher gave her a schedule that was very \_\_\_\_\_.
7. An \_\_\_\_\_ in Melbourne chose Burke to lead an expedition across Australia.
8. He felt \_\_\_\_\_ before he started taking the medicine, and now the medicine has \_\_\_\_\_ him even more.



## **h** Two-Word Verbs

Learn these two-word verbs and then fill in the blanks with the right words. Use the correct verb form. Do all of the two-word verb exercises in the book this way.

- run out of = use up; not have any more  
work out = exercise  
slow down = go more slowly  
speed up = go faster  
live on = have enough money to pay for necessities with

1. Cars have to \_\_\_\_\_ when they enter a city. When they leave the city, they can \_\_\_\_\_ again.
2. A lot of people like to go to a gymnasium and \_\_\_\_\_. This exercise is good for them.
3. The Lopez family adopted two children. Now they can't \_\_\_\_\_ the money Mr. Lopez gets for working.
4. Scott's men were hungry because they had almost \_\_\_\_\_ food.

## **i** Finding the Reason

Here are some sentences about the explorers you have read about. Give a reason for each statement. The first one is done for you.

Statement	Reason
Scott and his men were cold all the time.	<i>They didn't have enough fuel.</i>
Scott went to the South Pole.	
David-Neel studied Tibetan in India.	
Bering's expedition lost a lot of its food.	
Bering took scientists with him.	
Burke died on his expedition.	
Burke took camels on his expedition.	
The world knows about Burke's and Scott's expeditions.	



## **j** Collocations

Some words are often used together. For example, we often use the word "join" with the word "organization."

Read the following groups of words and then use the words printed in **bold** in the sentences below.

join a **team**

join an **expedition**

join an **organization**

join **hands**

join a **club**

join **forces**

1. Walter joined the soccer \_\_\_\_\_ because he is a very good player.
2. To do this dance, everyone stands in a circle and joins \_\_\_\_\_.
3. If you and I join \_\_\_\_\_, we'll be able to do the work more quickly.
4. I'd like to join an \_\_\_\_\_ that works for peace.
5. You don't have to be a great singer to join the music \_\_\_\_\_.

## **k** Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

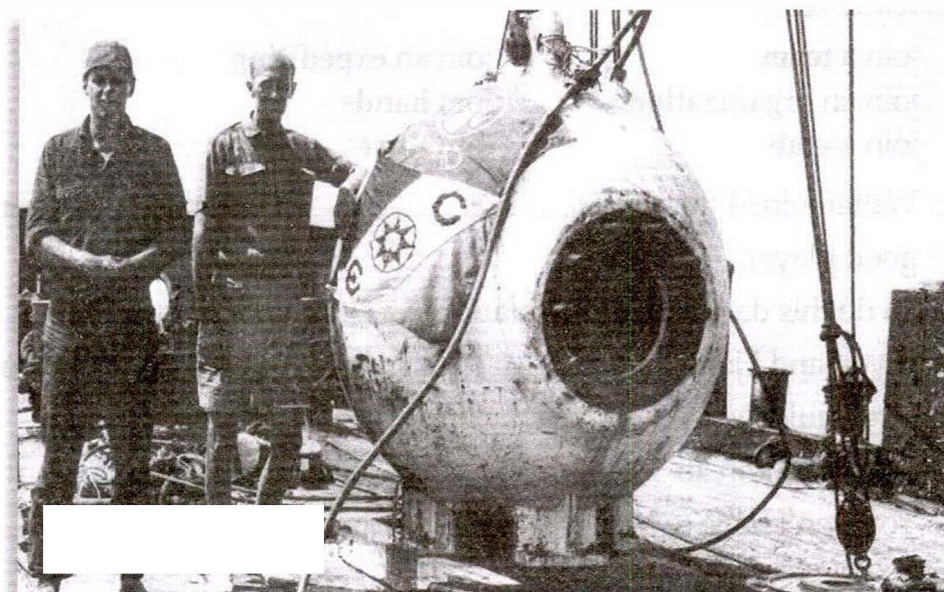
1. You are going to lead a journey to the South Pole. What will you do differently from the way Scott did it?
2. You are in the tent with Scott in March 1912. Write a message in your diary.





lesson  
**5**

# Into the Deep: Ocean Exploration



## Before You Read

1. Would you like to explore the ocean floor? Why or why not?
2. Would you be willing to explore the ocean in the metal ball shown in the picture above? Why or why not?
3. What are some of the dangers of ocean exploration?



## Context Clues

The words in **bold print** below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

1. Salt water covers **roughly** 71% of the Earth.
2. For centuries, people thought of the ocean as a travel **network**.  
It was a way to get from one place to another.
3. Sailors thought the ocean was a frightening place, full of dangerous **creatures**.
4. Early diving suits allowed people to **descend** 50 feet underwater.
5. Scientists discovered underwater mountains and more than 4,000 new **species**.

# 5 Into the Deep: Ocean Exploration



Salt water covers **roughly** 71% of the Earth's **surface**, and yet we have spent much more time exploring the Earth's mountains, forests, and deserts than studying its oceans. Scientists say that we know more about the

5 moon than we know about our own oceans. And today, we continue to spend more money on space exploration than on ocean exploration.

Why is it that we know so little about the oceans that surround us? Perhaps it is because, for centuries, people

10 thought of the ocean as just a travel **network**. It was a way to get from one place to another. Most ocean travelers stayed close to the coast. Their goal was not to explore the ocean but **rather** to find new trade routes for the exchange of spices and other goods.

15 To early sailors, the ocean was also a frightening place, full of dangerous **creatures**. They thought that,

instead; more exactly



deep below, the ocean was a dark and lifeless place. Believing this, people had little **incentive** to explore the ocean depths.

20 Ocean exploration was also **hampered** by the conditions below the surface. The tremendous **pressure** of the water would **crush** an unprotected diver. Water temperature on the ocean floor was not inviting either. Vents, or openings, on the ocean floor have  
25 temperatures as high as 254°F (254 degrees Fahrenheit) or 123°C (123 degrees Celsius).

To explore below the surface of the ocean, humans needed special equipment. Early diving suits from the late eighteenth century and early nineteenth century  
30 were not very useful. One type **enclosed** the diver's body in a **cylinder**, making it difficult to move around. A later type of diving suit replaced the large cylinder with a heavy metal **helmet**. Air from above the surface traveled through a tube into the helmet. These early  
35 diving suits allowed people to **descend** fifty feet below the ocean surface for about an hour.

In 1872, the first ship equipped for ocean exploration set out on a four-year trip around the world. The ship had two laboratories, and it carried the most advanced  
40 scientific equipment of the time. Scientists on the ship tested the temperature and **density** of sea water. They gathered information about ocean currents and meteorology. They discovered an underwater mountain chain and more than 4,000 new **species**. The results of  
45 this expedition encouraged interest in exploring farther below the ocean surface. To do this, however, divers needed better equipment to protect them from the pressure of water.

Two divers, Charles Beebe and Otis Barton, designed  
50 one of the early submersibles for deep-sea diving. It was a large, **hollow**, steel ball less than five feet in **diameter** and weighing 5,000 pounds. A long heavy chain connected the steel ball to a ship above. In 1934, Beebe and Barton descended half a mile below the surface of the ocean in  
55 their submersible. From inside the steel ball, they were able to see extraordinary creatures. This was a great

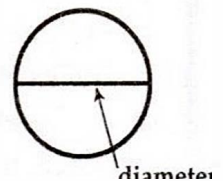


cylinder



helmet

empty; with nothing inside



breakthrough for ocean exploration, for now people could see the underwater world with their own eyes.

60 Since Beebe and Barton's record-breaking descent, improvements have been made in diving equipment, allowing people to travel deeper for longer amounts of time. Just twenty-six years after Beebe and Barton's half-mile descent, Jacques Piccard and two others traveled to a depth of 35,797 feet, or nearly seven miles, 65 in their own much improved submersible called the *Trieste*. Even at this great depth, the explorers discovered deep-sea life and new species.

The work of deep-sea explorers has given us a picture of life far below the surface. There is now 70 greater understanding of the **diversity** of life in the ocean. We are now more aware of our dependence on healthy oceans. Still, less than one tenth of 1% of the deep ocean has been explored. Sylvia Earle, one of the leading **experts** on oceans, says, "We're in a new 75 century and a new millennium, and most of the planet has yet to be seen."

variety





## a Vocabulary

descend	crush	hollow	enclosed
hamper	expert	diameter	helmets
surface	density	network	diversity

1. You can drink through a straw because it's \_\_\_\_\_ inside.
2. You need to have a hard \_\_\_\_\_ to write on.
3. Do you think it's easier to go up a mountain or to \_\_\_\_\_ a mountain?
4. It takes many years to become an \_\_\_\_\_ on something.
5. A tennis ball has a larger \_\_\_\_\_ than a golf ball.
6. If you drop a heavy weight on your foot, you might \_\_\_\_\_ it.
7. The population \_\_\_\_\_ is higher in cities than in the country.
8. Some countries require motorcyclists to wear \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Ice can \_\_\_\_\_ a ship's movement through water.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ is an important goal for many schools because there is much for us to learn from people who are different from us.

## b Vocabulary

pressure	rough	rather	incentive
species	enclosed	cylinder	network
descent	expert	creature	surface

1. There are many kinds of animal \_\_\_\_\_.
2. A table has a smooth \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I don't need to know the exact time of your arrival. Just give me a \_\_\_\_\_ time.
4. They keep their dogs \_\_\_\_\_ in a large fenced area.
5. I'd like to go to the beach this weekend \_\_\_\_\_ than the mountains.
6. Employers sometimes use money as an \_\_\_\_\_ to get people to work harder.
7. At sea level, air pushes against your body with a \_\_\_\_\_ of 14.7 pounds per square inch (1 kg per square centimeter).



8. Los Angeles has a huge \_\_\_\_\_ of highways.
9. A \_\_\_\_\_ has a flat circular top and bottom and straight sides.
10. There was some kind of \_\_\_\_\_ living in the old building.  
We heard it, but we never saw it.

## **c** Vocabulary Review

beggar	surrounded	temperature	civil war
delayed	in order to	broke down	ashore
decade	organization	details	remind

1. The soldiers \_\_\_\_\_ the building so that no one could escape.
2. What does the smell of an orange \_\_\_\_\_ you of?
3. The snowstorm \_\_\_\_\_ us for three hours because we had to drive very slowly.
4. A \_\_\_\_\_ asks people for money or food.
5. OPEC is the \_\_\_\_\_ of Petroleum Exporting Countries.
6. I only know she was in an accident. I don't know any of the \_\_\_\_\_.
7. There has been a \_\_\_\_\_ in Somalia for several years.  
Different groups of Somalis are fighting among themselves.
8. Sometimes the summer \_\_\_\_\_ in Antarctica is 0°C.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ get good grades, you have to do your homework.
10. A \_\_\_\_\_ is ten years.

## **d** True/False/Not Enough Information

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. More than 50% of the Earth is under water.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Early sailors were afraid to explore below the surface of the ocean.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. In most parts of the ocean floor, the water temperature is very hot.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The first diving suits were uncomfortable.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. The deepest parts of the ocean are lifeless.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Early divers carried their own air with them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The early submersibles had motors.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Jacques Piccard broke Beebe and Barton's deep-sea diving record.



## **e** Comprehension Questions

- \*1. Why do you think we know more about the moon than about the Earth's oceans?
2. What hampered ocean exploration for centuries?
3. What is an ocean vent?
- \*4. What was important about the 1872 scientific trip around the world?
5. How did Charles Beebe and Otis Barton contribute to ocean exploration?
6. How far was Jacques Piccard able to descend in the ocean?
7. What have we learned from ocean exploration?
- \*8. How are the oceans important to humans?

## **f** Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 3 (lines 15–19)?

- a. Early sailors didn't have a good reason to explore the oceans.
- b. Early sailors were afraid of the oceans.
- c. No one knew what was in the ocean.

## **g** Scanning

When you want to find just one detail in a text, it is not necessary to read carefully. You **scan** instead; that is, you look as quickly as possible until you find the information.

*Find these answers by scanning. Write short answers (not complete sentences). Write the number of the line where you found each answer.*

1. What is the temperature at vents in the ocean floor? \_\_\_\_\_
2. What did scientists discover in 1872? \_\_\_\_\_
3. How much did Beebe's submersible weigh? \_\_\_\_\_
4. What was the *Trieste*? \_\_\_\_\_
5. How deep did Jacques Piccard dive? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Who is Sylvia Earle? \_\_\_\_\_



## h Word Forms: Nouns

These are some common noun suffixes:

**-er, -ar, -or:** reminder, beggar, advisor

**-ist:** scientist

**-ment:** equipment

**-ion, -sion, -tion, -ation:** religion, decision, separation, realization

**-y:** discovery

**-ity:** diversity

**-ness:** loneliness

**-ance:** acceptance

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns. There are empty spaces on the chart because there are not four forms for every word.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	trade	trade trader		
2.	enclose	enclosure	enclosed	
3.	descend	descent		
4.		density	dense	densely
5.	diversify	diversity	diverse	
6.	rough	roughness	rough	roughly
7.	surround	surroundings	surrounded	

1. Japan and America \_\_\_\_\_ with each other.
2. A lake is an \_\_\_\_\_ body of water.
3. Beebe and Barton made a \_\_\_\_\_ of half a mile.
4. Steel is a very \_\_\_\_\_ material.
5. There is great \_\_\_\_\_ in the population of fish in the ocean.
6. Her father spoke \_\_\_\_\_ to her because he was angry.
7. It is not unusual for fish to \_\_\_\_\_ divers.





## i

## Prepositions

Write the correct preposition in each blank.

1. Salt water covers roughly 71% \_\_\_\_\_ the Earth's surface.
2. The ocean was a way to get \_\_\_\_\_ one place to another.
3. The temperature \_\_\_\_\_ the ocean floor varies from one place to another.
4. Diving suits \_\_\_\_\_ the late eighteenth century were difficult to move around in.
5. Air \_\_\_\_\_ above the surface traveled through a tube \_\_\_\_\_ the helmet.
6. Scientists tested the density \_\_\_\_\_ sea water.
7. A heavy chain connected the ball \_\_\_\_\_ a ship above.
8. Even \_\_\_\_\_ this great depth, the explorers discovered new life forms.

## i

## Articles: The

Some geographical locations include **the** in the name.

1. Certain countries (Note that most countries do *not* include **the** in the name):
  - the United States of America, *or* the United States, *or* the U.S.A., *or* the U.S.
  - the United Arab Emirates
  - the United Kingdom
  - the Dominican Republic
  - the Netherlands
2. Major points on the Earth:
  - the North Pole
  - the South Pole
  - the equator
3. Plurals of islands, lakes, and mountains:
  - the Canary Islands
  - the Great Lakes
  - the Himalaya Mountains



4. Oceans, seas, rivers, canals, deserts:

the Pacific Ocean  
the Bering Sea  
the Mississippi River  
the Suez Canal  
the Sahara Desert

Continents, most geographical areas, most countries, and single islands, lakes, and mountains do *not* have **the** in the name:

Asia  
Western Europe (*but* the Middle East)  
England  
Bering Island  
Lake Geneva  
Mount Everest

*Write the in the blank if it is necessary.*

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Panama Canal joins \_\_\_\_\_ Atlantic Ocean and \_\_\_\_\_ Pacific Ocean.
2. This canal used to belong to \_\_\_\_\_ United States.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Kuwait is near \_\_\_\_\_ United Arab Emirates and \_\_\_\_\_ Saudi Arabia.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Germany, \_\_\_\_\_ Belgium, and \_\_\_\_\_ Netherlands are in \_\_\_\_\_ Europe.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Lake Geneva is in \_\_\_\_\_ Switzerland.
6. Where are \_\_\_\_\_ Madeira Islands?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Jordan is in \_\_\_\_\_ Middle East.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Amazon River is in \_\_\_\_\_ South America.

## **k** Guided Writing

*Write one of these two short compositions.*

1. Do you think we should spend more money on space exploration or on ocean exploration? Give reasons to support your answer.
2. You are in Charles Beebe's submersible in 1932. Describe what you see and feel while you are descending.



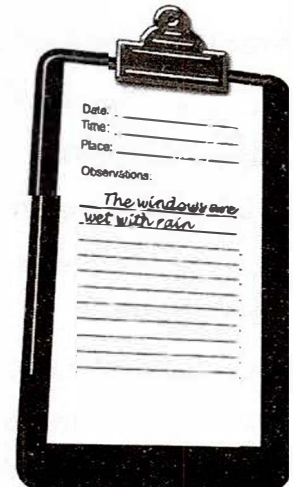
# Video Highlights

## Before You Watch

1. Read the information in the box.

Throughout history, explorers have gone to remote places like the North Pole to discover new things. However, you don't need to go on a long and exciting trip to explore. The word *explore* can also mean to look at something near you very closely.

2. Try it out. Explore the room around you. What do you see, hear, and smell? Copy the chart to the right and fill in the missing information at the top of the list. Then complete the list with at least three observations.
3. Compare your list with a partner's. Did you observe some of the same things? Which things were different?



## b As You Watch

Read the phrases and sentences below. They come from the video. What do you think the video is about?

1. "In the next thirty years, everything we want to find can be found."
2. "Including a 2,000-year-old Greece shipping vessel found off the coast of Cyprus."
3. "For fifty years, the Nauticos Corporation has scoured the ocean floor looking for sunken objects."
4. "Shipwrecks, marinas, even downed planes."



5. "Divers are really only good to about ten hundred feet."
6. "Worldwide, less than two companies do this kind of exploration."

Each sentence has a mistake. Watch the video and correct the sentences.

## **C** After You Watch

1. These words come from the video. Match them to the correct definition.
 

find	drop	drag	shift	identify	control
_____	a.	to pull with difficulty			
_____	b.	to change from one position to another			
_____	c.	to come across			
_____	d.	to recognize something or someone			
_____	e.	to cause to fall			
_____	f.	to guide something			
2. The Nauticos Corporation uses a system to find things in the ocean. Write a word from Exercise 1 to complete the sentences.
  - a. \_\_\_\_\_ Drop \_\_\_\_\_ sonar equipment in the ocean.
  - b. \_\_\_\_\_ equipment along the sea floor.
  - c. \_\_\_\_\_ target.
  - d. \_\_\_\_\_ to the control room.
  - e. \_\_\_\_\_ remote vehicle using joystick.
  - f. \_\_\_\_\_ object.
3. Describe the system Nauticos uses to find things in the ocean. Use *first, next, then, finally*.
 

*Example:* First, they drop sonar equipment in the ocean.
4. Discuss these questions with the class.
  - a. Would you like to be a deep-sea explorer? Why or why not?
  - b. If you were a deep-sea explorer, what would you like to find on the ocean floor?
  - c. Do you know of any famous shipwrecks on the ocean floor?
  - d. Have you or has someone you know ever found anything valuable on the beach?












# Activity Page

## Adventure Trail

You and your partner are two explorers who are going to travel all over the world. Like all great explorers, you will describe the different places you travel to. You will need a coin and two counters.

Put your counters on the Home square. Each person takes a turn tossing the coin. If the coin you toss lands heads up, move your counter forward one square. If it lands tails up, move your counter forward two squares. If your counter lands on a picture, describe the new place using the vocabulary words you know. Also, write two sentences about the place. Continue to toss the coin and move your counter until you reach the end (the Well Done! square). When you have reached the end, share your sentences with the class.

START AT HOME 			EAT AT A RESTAURANT— GO BACK 1 SPACE
		STAY IN A HOTEL— MISS A TURN	
			
BITTEN BY A SNAKE—GO BACK 3 SPACES			WELL DONE! NOW, GO BACK HOME!



## Understanding Definitions

1. Draw lines to match the following two-word verbs with their meanings.

- |               |                              |
|---------------|------------------------------|
| a. get along  | return                       |
| b. run out    | be careful                   |
| c. work out   | do a series of exercises     |
| d. give up    | have a friendly relationship |
| e. get back   | not work at all              |
| f. break down | not have any left            |
| g. look out   | not try any more; surrender  |

2. You can learn new two-word verbs from your dictionary. For example, these verbs all begin with *get*. Read their definitions.

**21** *phrasal v.* [T] to get ahead: to succeed, improve oneself: *She got a good job and is getting ahead in life.*

**26** *phrasal v. insep.* [I] to get away (from s.o. or s.t.):  
a. to escape: *The criminal got away from the police.* b. to go on vacation: *I got away for a week in the Caribbean.*

**30** *phrasal v. insep.* to get behind: a. [T] s.o. or s.t.: to support, help succeed: *Many people got behind the politician and helped her win the election.* b. [I] in s.t.: to be late with one's work, payments, etc.: *He got behind in his rent payments and had to leave the apartment.*

**41** *phrasal v. insep.* to get on with s.t. or s.o.: a. [T] s.t.: to start doing or continue with s.t., often after interruption: *Stop watching television and get on with your homework!* b. [I;T] s.o.: to have a friendly relationship with: *How do you get on with your boss?*



Now write in the missing part of each verb.

- a. Donna is a friendly person. She gets \_\_\_\_\_  
with everyone.
- b. Try not to get \_\_\_\_\_ in your homework.
- c. The explorers caught a rabbit for dinner, but it got  
\_\_\_\_\_.
- d. Pierre is trying really hard to get \_\_\_\_\_. He's  
got a good job, he's just bought a house, and he is starting  
college next month.
- e. Both of us were tired and needed a break. We finally got  
\_\_\_\_\_ for a week at the beach.
- f. She should stop wasting time and get \_\_\_\_\_  
with her work.
- g. I had an idea to increase sales. My boss got  
\_\_\_\_\_ the idea and sales increased 20%.





# World Issues

## unit 2

*Our responsibility is to protect the Earth for a million years.*  
—Robert Hunter, environmentalist





# World Population Growth



## Before You Read

1. How many people live in your country? In your city?
2. Think about your city with twice as many people as it has now. How would things be different?
3. Do you want to have any children? How many?



## Context Clues

The words in bold print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

1. In the eighteenth century, the population of the world increased **gradually**. However, in the nineteenth century, the world's population grew very rapidly.
2. By the year 2050, researchers **predict** that the population of the world will be 9.1 billion.
3. Fresh water is **crucial** for health and food production.
4. What **effect** will 3 billion more people have on the air we breathe?
5. We don't know how long the world's supply of petroleum will **last**.

# 1 World Population Growth



For thousands of years, the population of the world increased **gradually**. Then, in the mid-nineteenth century, the world's population started to increase rapidly. In the 100 years between 1830 and 1930, the population of the world grew from 1 billion to 2 billion people. By 1960, just thirty years later, the world's population had hit 3 billion. Fifteen years later, the population reached 4 billion. Then, just eleven years later, there were 5 billion people on Earth. In 1999, we passed the 6 billion mark. Today, the world's population grows by 76 million people every year. That is about 240,000 people every day. By the year 2050, researchers **predict** that the population of the world will be 9.1 billion.



Does the Earth have the **natural resources** to  
15 support this many people? Unfortunately, the answer to  
this question **depends on** information we don't have.  
For example, we don't know how people will choose to  
live in the future. We don't know what their **standard of**  
**living** will be. We also don't know what new  
20 **technologies** will be **available** in the future.

raw materials found  
in nature, such as  
trees, oil, and  
natural gas

the overall quality  
of life that people  
experience

We do know that the Earth's natural resources are  
**limited**. Fresh water, for example, is **crucial** for health and  
food production. However, more than 97% of the water  
on Earth is salt water, which is poisonous to both people  
25 and crops. Only 3% of the water on Earth is fresh water,  
and three quarters of that fresh water is frozen at the  
North and South Poles. Today, the **demand** for fresh  
water is greater than the supply in roughly eighty  
countries around the world. By 2025, scientists predict  
30 that forty-eight countries will have **chronic** shortages of  
water. At present, desalinization, or the removal of salt  
from salt water, is not a solution to the shortage of fresh  
water. It takes a lot of energy to remove the salt from  
ocean water, and that makes the desalinization process  
35 very expensive.

long-lasting

The amount of land we can use to produce food is  
also limited. Today, roughly 11% of the land on Earth  
can be used for crops, while another 20% is available for  
raising animals. Each year, however, more of this land is  
40 lost as cities grow and roads stretch across the land. In  
addition, overcultivation has **already** damaged an  
amount of farmland equal to the size of the United  
States and Canada **combined**. It is possible to increase  
the amount of farmland, but only a little. Some  
45 farmland can be more productive if people start using  
different farming methods, but this will not increase  
worldwide production very much.

Clean air is another important natural resource.  
However, it too is **threatened** by the growing  
50 population. The average person today puts about  
1.1 metric tons of carbon into the atmosphere each year.  
Most of it comes from burning fossil fuels—gasoline,



coal, oil, wood, and natural gas. Scientists say that the amount of carbon dioxide in the air is already 18%  
55 higher than it was in 1960. What **effect** would 3 billion more people have on the air we breathe?

While we have many different **sources** of **commercial** energy, there is a limited supply of many of them. Today, most of the world's commercial energy  
60 comes from three **nonrenewable** energy resources—petroleum, natural gas, and coal. Three quarters of this commercial energy is used by **developed** countries. As the standard of living goes up in other countries, so will the demand for energy. Some scientists predict that if  
65 everyone in the world lived like an American, our fossil fuel supply would **last** for just fifteen more years.

Clearly, the number of people that the Earth can support in the future will depend on many things. The Earth may be able to support 9 billion people, but what  
70 will their standard of living be? And what effect will all these people have on the environment?

**sold in the marketplace**

**economically strong**





## Vocabulary

gradually	predict	natural resources	depends on
technology	available	limited	standard of living
crucial	demand	chronic	combined

1. There is a \_\_\_\_\_ amount of oil in the Earth.
2. When automobiles first became \_\_\_\_\_, very few people could buy them.
3. If you have a \_\_\_\_\_ problem, it never goes away.
4. Some countries are poor because they have very few \_\_\_\_\_.
5. We don't yet have the \_\_\_\_\_ to supply the world with energy without using oil.
6. People are \_\_\_\_\_ learning that we must take care of the environment.
7. When there is an increase in the \_\_\_\_\_ for oil, the price usually goes up.
8. The health of the Earth \_\_\_\_\_ how we use its natural resources.
9. Researchers \_\_\_\_\_ that the use of coal will increase more than 50% over the next two decades.
10. It's \_\_\_\_\_ for everyone to have a supply of clean water.

## b Vocabulary

threat	already	effect	source
commercial	developing	last	nonrenewable
combine	limit	prediction	standard

1. The population is growing faster than the food supply in many \_\_\_\_\_ countries.
2. In our town, all of the businesses are in the \_\_\_\_\_ district.
3. Wind is a renewable resource, while oil is a \_\_\_\_\_ resource.
4. It's only 8 p.m., but I'm \_\_\_\_\_ tired.
5. If you use the hot water slowly, it will \_\_\_\_\_ longer.
6. Overpopulation could be a \_\_\_\_\_ to the health of the Earth.



7. Using more solar and wind energy would have a positive \_\_\_\_\_ on the environment.
8. If you \_\_\_\_\_ salt and water, you get salty water.
9. The \_\_\_\_\_ of living is higher in some countries than in others.
10. The Internet is a good \_\_\_\_\_ of information about population growth.

## **C** Vocabulary Review

skill	rather	mistake	blind
experts	supply	surrounded	include
exhausted	civil war	species	ashore

1. Mr. Rossi was \_\_\_\_\_ after driving for ten hours.
2. For my research paper, I read many books written by \_\_\_\_\_ on air pollution.
3. Typing is a very useful \_\_\_\_\_ for students. They can learn by practicing.
4. I do not use the sun to heat my house but \_\_\_\_\_ oil.
5. Alice injured her eyes in an accident. Now she is \_\_\_\_\_.
6. There was a terrible \_\_\_\_\_ in Spain in the 1930s. Almost a million people died.
7. The demand for food and water is already greater than the \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Overpopulation is a threat to many animal \_\_\_\_\_.
9. The children \_\_\_\_\_ their teacher, who was giving away candy.
10. Many people think it's a \_\_\_\_\_ to depend on oil for our energy.



## Multiple Choice

For the rest of the book, there will be no asterisks (\*) before any multiple-choice items. You will have to decide if the answer is in one of the sentences or if you have to figure it out yourself. In this exercise, use the text and the charts to answer the questions.

### World's Largest Urban Areas in Population (2004)

1. Tokyo/Yokohama, Japan	31,224,700
2. New York City, U.S.A.	30,107,600
3. Mexico City, Mexico	21,503,700
4. Seoul, South Korea	20,156,000
5. Sao Paulo, Brazil	19,090,200
6. Jakarta, Indonesia	18,206,700
7. Osaka/Kobe/Kyoto, Japan	17,608,500
8. Bombay, India	17,340,900
9. Los Angeles, U.S.A.	16,710,400
10. Cairo, Egypt	15,863,300

### World's Largest Countries in Population (2004)

1. China	1,298,847,624
2. India	1,065,070,607
3. U.S.A.	293,027,571
4. Indonesia	238,452,952
5. Brazil	184,101,109
6. Pakistan	159,196,336
7. Russia	143,782,338
8. Bangladesh	141,340,476
9. Nigeria	137,253,133
10. Japan	127,333,002

1. There were \_\_\_\_\_ as many people in the world in 1930 as there were in 1830.
  - a. twice
  - b. three times
  - c. four times
2. Between 1960 and 2000, the population of the world \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. doubled
  - b. grew three times larger
  - c. increased by more than a billion people
3. About \_\_\_\_\_ of the Earth's land can be used for raising food.
  - a. 11%
  - b. 20%
  - c. 30%
4. The wind and the sun are \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. nonrenewable energy resources
  - b. renewable energy resources
  - c. limited energy resources



5. The amount of \_\_\_\_\_ in the air has increased since 1960.
  - a. fossil fuels
  - b. carbon dioxide
  - c. natural resources
6. The developed countries use \_\_\_\_\_ commercial energy than the developing countries.
  - a. a little more
  - b. two times more
  - c. a lot more
7. Some scientists predict that, by the year 2025, \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. the population will reach 9 billion
  - b. some countries will have serious problems getting fresh water
  - c. 11% of our farmland will be gone
8. \_\_\_\_\_ has the urban area with the largest population.
  - a. Brazil
  - b. Nigeria
  - c. Japan
9. In \_\_\_\_\_, the population of the whole world was about the same as the population of China today.
  - a. 1750
  - b. 1850
  - c. 1950
10. \_\_\_\_\_ has almost the same population as Cairo and Los Angeles together.
  - a. Mexico City
  - b. Tokyo
  - c. Seoul



## Comprehension Questions

*For the rest of the book, there will be no asterisks (\*) before any questions. You will have to decide if the answer is in one of the sentences or if you have to figure it out yourself. Use the text and charts to answer these questions.*

1. How has the population of the world changed in the past 2000 years?
2. Why is the standard of living different in different countries?
3. Can the amount of farmland on Earth be increased?
4. Why can't we use most of the Earth's water?





5. What is a nonrenewable energy resource?
6. Why is the demand for energy increasing everywhere in the world?
7. Is it better to have a smaller population with a higher standard of living for everyone or to have a larger population with a lower standard of living?
8. How many people can the Earth support?
9. Which European country is among the world's largest?
10. Which urban area of the world has the largest population?
11. Do you think your country has too many people? Give a reason for your answer.



### Main Idea

What is the main idea of this reading? Write it in a sentence.



### Two-Word Verbs

Learn these two-word verbs and then fill in the blanks with the right words. Use the correct verb form.

cut down = cut and remove (as in cut down a tree)

figure out = find (the answer)

go up = increase

hang up = end a telephone conversation

make up = think of (a new story or idea)

1. Mr. Hasegawa \_\_\_\_\_ funny stories to tell his children.
2. The big old tree in our front yard is dead. We have to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I can't \_\_\_\_\_ the answer to this math problem.
4. When Tom finished talking to his friend on the phone, he said "Goodbye" and \_\_\_\_\_.
5. When there is a shortage of something, the price usually \_\_\_\_\_.





## Irregular Verbs

Memorize these verb forms. Then put the right form of a verb in each of the blanks.

Simple	Past	Past Participle
freeze	froze	frozen
forbid	forbade	forbidden
sink	sank	sunk
shoot	shot	shot

- The law \_\_\_\_\_ driving over 40 kilometers an hour on side streets in the city. You can drive 60 or 75 on main streets.
- A small sailboat hit a rock, and within an hour it had \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ food is quick and easy to cook.
- Bob went hunting and \_\_\_\_\_ a bear.



## Word Forms: Adjectives

Adjectives describe nouns. They are usually before the noun. They are sometimes after the verb **be**.

These are **difficult** questions.

These questions are **difficult**.

Participles are often used as adjectives. The third form of the verb is the past participle—for example, **talked** or **frozen**. The **-ing** form of the verb is the present participle—for example, **talking**.

The world is **overpopulated**.

The **growing** population is causing environmental problems.



Choose a word from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	predict	prediction	predictable	predictably
2.	shorten	shortage	short	shortly
3.	depend	dependence	dependent	dependently
4.	limit	limit	limited	
5.	populate	population	populous	
6.	care	care	careful careless	carefully carelessly
7.	use	use	useful useless	usefully uselessly
8.	combine	combination	combined	

- Anne likes to read books with a \_\_\_\_\_ ending. She doesn't like surprises.
- The secretary was \_\_\_\_\_ of paper and had to order some.
- Many countries are \_\_\_\_\_ on oil for fuel.
- The speed \_\_\_\_\_ in my area is 30 miles per hour.
- What is the \_\_\_\_\_ of your country?
- If you are \_\_\_\_\_ when you write your composition, you will probably get a good grade. If you write \_\_\_\_\_, you may fail.
- A sled is \_\_\_\_\_ if you live in Kuwait.
- They use a \_\_\_\_\_ of resources for energy in their house—the sun, oil, and wind power.



**j****Articles**

*Put an article in each blank if one is necessary.*

1. For thousands of years, \_\_\_\_\_ population of \_\_\_\_\_ world increased gradually.
2. By \_\_\_\_\_ year 2050, researchers predict that \_\_\_\_\_ population of \_\_\_\_\_ world will be 9.1 billion.
3. We don't know how \_\_\_\_\_ people will choose to live in the future.
4. More than 97% of \_\_\_\_\_ water on Earth is \_\_\_\_\_ salt water.
5. Today, \_\_\_\_\_ demand for \_\_\_\_\_ fresh water is greater than \_\_\_\_\_ supply.
6. It is possible to increase \_\_\_\_\_ amount of farmland, but only \_\_\_\_\_ little.
7. Overcultivation has already damaged an amount of farmland equal to the size of \_\_\_\_\_ United States and \_\_\_\_\_ Canada combined.
8. We have many different sources of \_\_\_\_\_ commercial energy.

**k****Guided Writing**

*Write one of these two short compositions.*

1. Describe what your country is doing to help the world population problem. If it isn't doing anything, what do you think it should do? Why?
2. Describe life in your city ten years from now if twice as many people live there.





lesson

2

# Changes in the Family



## Before You Read

1. How many people are in your family?
2. Where do the people in your family live?
3. How is your life different from your grandparents' lives?



## Context Clues

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

1. In some families, grandparents, parents, children, uncles, and other **relatives** all live together.
2. In some families, mothers stay at home to **take care of** the children.
3. Since 1970, there has been a 200% increase in the number of single-parent families. The number has increased **tremendously**.
4. **Industrialization** made it possible for many young people to move to the city to work in factories.

## 2 Changes in the Family



Barbara Todisco, 35, and her husband, Ted, 37, have two children. They live together in what is called a **nuclear** family. A nuclear family **consists of** two generations—two parents and their children.

is made up of

- 5 Esme Tanguay, 43, lives with her daughter, Maria, 11. They live together in a single-parent family. In the United States, a quarter of American children now **grow up** in single-parent families.

- 10 Juan Diego, 45, of Miami, Florida, has two children from his first marriage. His second wife, Nancy, has two children from her first marriage. Juan and Nancy also have a child together. Juan and Nancy and the five children live together in what is now called a blended family.

- 15 Carl Jacobs, 32, lives with his wife, their two children, and his wife's mother and father. They are an **extended** family. Extended families consist of more than



one set of parents and children. The most common type of extended family consists of a **married couple** and one or more of their married children all living together in one **household**. An extended family might also consist of two brothers and their wives and children. A large extended family might consist of grandparents, parents, children, uncles, and other **relatives**.

For centuries, the extended family was the most common type of family. One benefit of living in an extended family is that there are more people to share the work. This was especially important in societies where mothers had to work outside the home, raising crops or gathering food. In an extended family, mothers could work outside the home while other family members were available to **take care of** the children and do other household **tasks**.

In the United States, one of the biggest changes in families in the last century has been a decrease in the number of extended families. One very important reason for this decrease was **industrialization**. The growth of industry made it possible for many young people to leave their families and move to the city to work in factories. By the 1920s, a **majority** of children in the United States were no longer living in extended families. Instead, they were living in families with a father who went to work and a mother who stayed at home.

As long as a family could **afford** to have the mother stay at home, this type of family was able to survive. For many families, however, this was not **financially** possible. As the cost of living rose in the United States, more and more women needed to work outside the home. At the same time, an **emphasis** on equality for men and women opened the door to new job **opportunities** for women. Before long, single-parent families, blended families, and even extended families were becoming more common.

Since 1970, the number of single-parent families in the United States has increased **tremendously**. Today, there are roughly 90 million single-parent families with

more than half but not all

have enough money (for something)

special importance (placed on)

chances for advancement



children under the age of 18. That is a 200% increase since 1970. Nearly 99% of these single-parent families  
60 are headed by women. Many **sociologists** have studied single-parent families to find out why they are increasing in number. The fact that it is now easier to get a **divorce** in the United States does not fully explain this increase. In many countries, divorce rates **stabilized**  
65 in the 1980s but the number of single-parent families continued to increase. In order to get a better explanation for the increase in the number of single-parent families, it is also necessary to look at why people aren't remarrying and why there are more births  
70 outside of marriage today. These two factors are also contributing to the rise in the number of single-parent families.

Boutros Boutros-Ghali, the former Secretary-General of the United Nations, once said that families "are at the  
75 leading edge of change and are adapting to serious challenges, often under very demanding conditions." The truth is that families have always had to change and adapt, but somehow the family has always survived.





## Vocabulary

married	took care of	emphasized	opportunities
consisted of	stabilized	industrial	industry
grew up	extended	nuclear	sociologists

1. The \_\_\_\_\_ family is larger than the \_\_\_\_\_ family.
2. Her mother \_\_\_\_\_ the children while she was in the hospital.
3. When his temperature finally \_\_\_\_\_ at 100°F, the doctors were able to operate.
4. Lunch \_\_\_\_\_ salad, soup, and sandwiches.
5. Mr. and Mrs. Gorder are a \_\_\_\_\_ couple.
6. Japan is an \_\_\_\_\_ nation. It has heavy and light \_\_\_\_\_.
7. He \_\_\_\_\_ in Canada, but he spent his adult life in France.
8. Their parents \_\_\_\_\_ the importance of studying and learning, and now all of the children are professors.
9. He had so many job \_\_\_\_\_ after graduate school that he had trouble deciding what to do.

## b Vocabulary

divorced	afford	household	stable
majority	sociologist	task	opportunity
financial	couple	tremendous	relatives

1. Maria is from Mexico, but she has several \_\_\_\_\_ in California. Three of her aunts live there with their families.
2. Her brother was married for ten years before he got \_\_\_\_\_.
3. There are fifty students in my sociology class. The \_\_\_\_\_ of students are from the United States, but there are also five international students.
4. A \_\_\_\_\_ studies how a society is organized.
5. A bank is a type of \_\_\_\_\_ organization.



6. The car I saw costs \$10,000, but I can \_\_\_\_\_ to pay only \$7,000. I guess I'll have to find a cheaper car.
7. I need a \_\_\_\_\_ of dollars, not just one.
8. My father grew up in a \_\_\_\_\_ of twelve people.
9. My least favorite household \_\_\_\_\_ is washing dishes.
10. In my opinion, a house with eight bedrooms is a \_\_\_\_\_ house.

## **C** Vocabulary Review: Definitions

*Match each word with its definition.*

- |                     |  |
|---------------------|--|
| _____ 1. blizzard   | a. instead                                 |
| _____ 2. inland     | b. living things                           |
| _____ 3. rather     | c. worse                                   |
| _____ 4. belongings | d. stop running or working                 |
| _____ 5. remain     | e. things you own                          |
| _____ 6. creatures  | f. bad snow and wind storm                 |
| _____ 7. expert     | g. make a guess                            |
| _____ 8. break down | h. stay in one place                       |
| _____ 9. depend on  | i. someone who knows a lot about a subject |
| _____ 10. predict   | j. away from the ocean                     |
|                     | k. need                                    |
|                     | l. better than                             |

## **d** True/False/Not Enough Information

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. A blended family consists of one parent.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. A nuclear family is smaller than an extended family.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Parents and children are from the same generation.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The family has changed because of industrialization.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. A single-parent family and a blended family both have more than one generation.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. In the 1920s, most children in the United States lived in blended families.



- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The best way to raise children is in a nuclear family.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. There is just one reason why the number of single-parent families has increased.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. As countries industrialize, family size decreases.

### **C**omprehension Questions

1. What is a nuclear family?
2. What is a blended family?
3. What is one benefit of living in an extended family?
4. What is one effect that industrialization has had on families?
5. How are families changing in your country?

### **f** Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 5 (lines 25–33)? Write it in a sentence.





## Word Forms: Adjectives

These are some common adjective suffixes: **-able, -al, -ful, -ive, -less, -like, -ous, -t, -y.**

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	socialize	society	social	socially
2.	industrialize	industry industrialization	industrial	industrially
3.	marry	marriage	marriageable	
4.	afford		affordable	affordably
5.	control	control	(un)controllable	(un)controllably
6.	limit	limit	limitless (un)limited	
7.	separate	separation	separable (in)separable	
8.	depend	dependence	dependable	dependably

1. Industrialization causes serious \_\_\_\_\_ problems in a country.
2. Many countries are trying to \_\_\_\_\_ their economies.
3. When his daughter reached a \_\_\_\_\_ age, he sent her to live with his sister.
4. For many people, a car is not \_\_\_\_\_.
5. If you drive too fast, you might lose \_\_\_\_\_ of the car. The car will become \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The supply of petroleum in the Earth is not \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The two children are \_\_\_\_\_. They start crying when they can't be together.
8. The last person who worked here was not \_\_\_\_\_. He said that he would do things, but he didn't always do them.





## **h** Articles

*Put articles in the blanks if they are necessary.*

1. They live together in \_\_\_\_\_ single-parent family.
2. In the United States, \_\_\_\_\_ quarter of American children grow up in \_\_\_\_\_ single-parent families.
3. Juan and Nancy also have \_\_\_\_\_ child.
4. For centuries, \_\_\_\_\_ extended family was \_\_\_\_\_ most common type of family.
5. In \_\_\_\_\_ extended family, \_\_\_\_\_ mothers could work outside \_\_\_\_\_ home.
6. One of \_\_\_\_\_ biggest changes in \_\_\_\_\_ families in \_\_\_\_\_ last century has been \_\_\_\_\_ decrease in \_\_\_\_\_ number of \_\_\_\_\_ extended families.

## **i** Summarizing

A **summary** of a paragraph gives all the important information in the paragraph. It is usually just one sentence. A summary of a complete reading text has a few sentences.

*Choose the best summary sentence for each paragraph.*

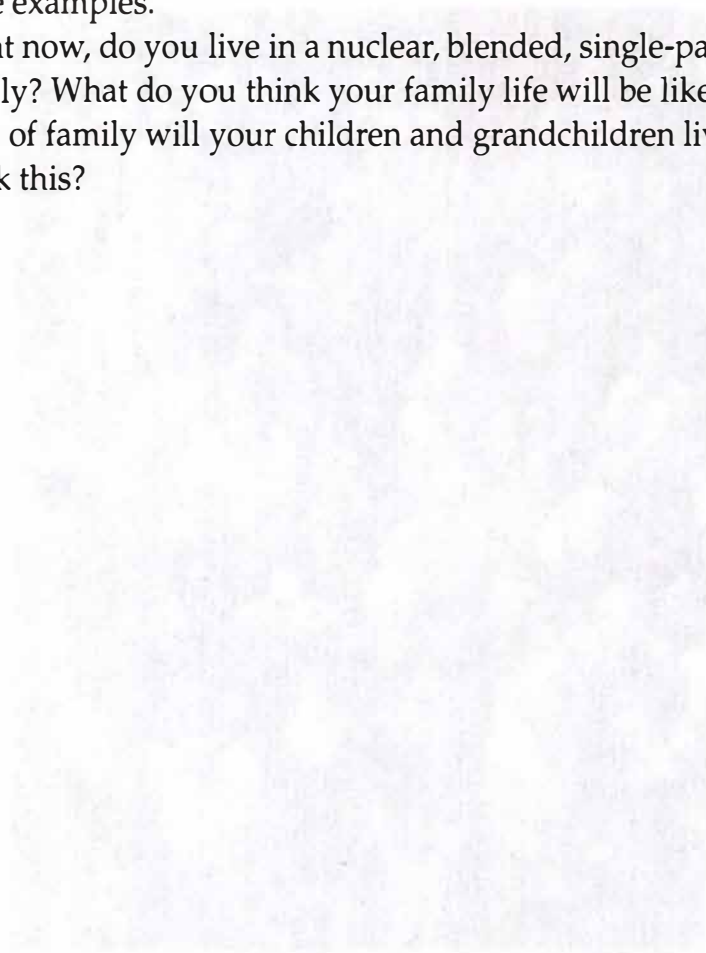
1. Paragraph 4 (lines 15–24)
  - a. Carl Jacobs lives in an extended family that consists of his wife and children and his wife's parents.
  - b. There are different kinds of extended families, but they all consist of more than one set of parents and children.
  - c. Extended families consist of more than one set of parents and children.
2. Paragraph 6 (lines 34–44)
  - a. One of the biggest changes in American families has been the decrease in the number of extended families.
  - b. By the 1920s, most American children lived in nuclear families.
  - c. The growth of industry in the United States caused a decrease in the number of extended families and an increase in the number of nuclear families.



## **j** Guided Writing

*Write one of these two short compositions.*

1. In your country, how are the family lives of you and your friends different from the family lives of your grandparents when they were young? Give examples.
2. Right now, do you live in a nuclear, blended, single-parent, or extended family? What do you think your family life will be like in the future? What kind of family will your children and grandchildren live in? Why do you think this?



lesson

3

# Women and Change



## Before You Read

1. In your country, do girls and boys get the same education?
2. Who does most of the work in your house?
3. How many women work in the government of your country?  
What do they do?

## Context Clues

The words in **bold print** below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

1. Many reports have been **published** on the rights of women.
2. The reports have a lot of good news, but they also have some **negative** news.
3. Women do most of the **domestic** work—for example, cooking and washing clothes.
4. Women do **nearly** 66% of the world's work.
5. Many programs help women, **as well as** men, improve their standard of living.

## 3 Women and Change



“Women hold up half the sky.” This is an old Chinese saying. However, research suggests that perhaps women do more than their share of “holding up the sky.”

- 5 Many reports have been **published** on the conditions and rights of women **throughout** the world. Some of the news in the reports is very **positive**. For example, 90% of all countries have **official** organizations to improve the lives of women. More than
- 10 half of the countries have laws to protect the rights of women, and 90% of all countries have **passed** laws to give women equal pay for equal work. WHO (World Health Organization) and UNICEF (United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund) have
- 15 programs to improve the health of people in developing countries, **especially** women and children. Birth-control methods are now available to more than half of the women in the world. Almost half of the children in





20 school now are girls, a big change from the past,  
because in many countries education was not available  
to girls.

The reports also have **negative** news. Although most  
countries have official organizations to improve  
women's lives, many of these organizations don't do  
25 anything. Women make up 50% of the world's  
population, but they do **nearly** 66% of the world's  
work. They do most of the **domestic** work—for  
example, cooking and washing clothes. Millions of  
women also work outside the home. They have become  
30 50% of the **workforce** in many countries. For this work,  
however, they earn about half as much as men, and,  
**of course**, they earn nothing for their domestic work.

Reports also show that there are still very few  
women in high government **positions**. In fact, only  
35 about 15% of the positions in government are held by  
women. In addition, more than half of the people who  
can't read and write are women. Being **illiterate** doesn't  
mean people are not intelligent. However, not being  
able to read and write does make it more difficult for  
40 people to change their lives.

In developing countries, where three quarters of the  
world's population lives, women produce more than  
half of the food. In Africa, 80% of all **agricultural** work is  
done by women. In some parts of Africa, this is a typical  
45 day for a woman. At 4:45 a.m., she gets up, washes, and  
eats. It takes her a half hour to walk to the **fields**, and  
she works there until 3:00 p.m. She collects firewood and  
gets home at 4:00. She spends the next hour and a half  
preparing food to cook. Then she collects water for  
50 another hour. From 6:30 to 8:30, she cooks. After dinner,  
she spends an hour washing the dishes and her children.  
Finally, around 9:30 p.m., she goes to bed.

There are many programs to help people improve  
their agricultural skills. However, for years, these  
55 programs provided money and training for men but not  
for women. Now this is changing. International  
organizations and programs are helping women, as  
**well as** men, improve their agricultural production.

almost

total number of  
people working

naturally; clearly

jobs; places

farming



fields



Clearly, women's lives have changed in many ways.

- 60 Some of these changes have been positive, giving many women legal rights and better living conditions. Ideally, in the future, more and more women will benefit from new opportunities, good education, and legal rights.

## **a** Vocabulary

published  
agriculture  
throughout

official  
illiterate  
pass

especially  
as well as  
positive

domestic  
of course  
nearly

1. What book company \_\_\_\_\_ this book?
2. I like all kinds of fruit, but I \_\_\_\_\_ like bananas.
3. A \_\_\_\_\_ worker does a family's housework.
4. There are many programs available to help \_\_\_\_\_ people learn to read and write.
5. Getting a new job was the most \_\_\_\_\_ thing that happened to her last year.
6. Overpopulation affects the environment \_\_\_\_\_ the standard of living.
7. In some countries, school students must \_\_\_\_\_ an exam before they graduate.
8. If you have \$9.80, you have \_\_\_\_\_ ten dollars.



## **b** Vocabulary

official	of course	agricultural	throughout
negative	field	position	workforce
publish	passed	nearly	domestic

1. He wants to go to an \_\_\_\_\_ school to learn about farming.
2. Her 12-year-old son wanted to drive the car, but \_\_\_\_\_ she wouldn't let him.
3. They put a fence around the \_\_\_\_\_ so that the cattle couldn't leave the farm.
4. After working at several low-paying jobs, he finally got a good \_\_\_\_\_ at a bank.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ of a country is made up of both men and women.
6. There have been wars \_\_\_\_\_ human history.
7. The child was unhappy because his teacher said something \_\_\_\_\_ about his writing.
8. WHO is an \_\_\_\_\_ organization of the United Nations.

## **c** Vocabulary Review: Definitions

*Match the words with their meaning.*

- |                      |   |
|----------------------|---|
| _____ 1. relative    | a. a person who studies society         |
| _____ 2. divorced    | b. become an adult                      |
| _____ 3. population  | c. small job                            |
| _____ 4. task        | d. have enough money to buy (something) |
| _____ 5. sociologist | e. extremely tired                      |
| _____ 6. majority    | f. person                               |
| _____ 7. grow up     | g. number of people in an area          |
| _____ 8. afford      | h. way                                  |
| _____ 9. descend     | i. more than half                       |
| _____ 10. exhausted  | j. family member                        |
|                      | k. no longer married                    |
|                      | l. go down                              |





## Multiple Choice

Use the text and this chart to answer the questions below.

	Percentage of Total Work Hours Put In by	
	Men	Women
Cuts down forests, prepares fields	95	5
Turns the soil	70	30
Plants seeds and cuttings	50	50
Hoes and weeds	30	70
Gathers crops	40	60
Carries crops home	20	80
Stores crops	20	80
Processes food crops	10	90
Sells the extra crops	40	60
Carries water and fuel	10	90
Cares for domestic animals	50	50
Hunts	90	10
Feeds and cares for the family	5	95

Source: UN Handbook on Women in Africa.

1. According to the chart, women in Africa do about \_\_\_\_\_ of the cooking.
  - a. 50%
  - b. 70%
  - c. 90%
2. \_\_\_\_\_ of the world's countries have official organizations to improve the life of women.
  - a. All but 90%
  - b. Half
  - c. All but 10%
3. The average woman earns \_\_\_\_\_ the average man.
  - a. more than
  - b. the same as
  - c. less than





4. \_\_\_\_\_ in the world are literate.
  - a. More men than women
  - b. More women than men
  - c. About the same number of women and men
5. In Africa, \_\_\_\_\_ of the farmwork is done by men.
  - a. 80%
  - b. 50%
  - c. 20%
6. An illiterate person \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. can't think
  - b. can't speak
  - c. can't read
7. In an African village, men do about half of the \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. weeding
  - b. planting
  - c. hunting
8. In Africa, village \_\_\_\_\_ carry most of the crops, water, and fuel.
  - a. men
  - b. women
  - c. children

### Comprehension Questions

1. What does the saying "Women hold up half the sky" mean?
2. How many countries have laws to protect the rights of women?
3. Why are more women than men illiterate?
4. Give a reason why some women work more hours than men.
5. What organizations have programs to improve the health of women?

### Main Idea

What is the main idea of this reading? Write one or two sentences.





## Scanning

Scan the reading to find answers to these questions. Write a short answer and the number of the line where you found the answer.

1. What percentage of jobs are held by women?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. What percentage of positions in government are held by women?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. What percentage of countries have laws about equal pay?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. In Africa, what percentage of the farmwork do women do?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. What percentage of women have birth-control methods available?  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. What percentage of children in school are boys?  
\_\_\_\_\_



## Articles

Put articles in the blanks if they are necessary.

1. This is \_\_\_\_\_ old Chinese saying.
2. Some of \_\_\_\_\_ news in \_\_\_\_\_ reports is very positive.
3. For example, 90% of all \_\_\_\_\_ countries have \_\_\_\_\_ official organizations to improve \_\_\_\_\_ lives of \_\_\_\_\_ women.
4. Almost half of \_\_\_\_\_ children in \_\_\_\_\_ school now are \_\_\_\_\_ girls.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ millions of women also work outside \_\_\_\_\_ home.
6. More than half of \_\_\_\_\_ people who can't read and write are \_\_\_\_\_ women.
7. In \_\_\_\_\_ Africa, 80% of all agricultural work is done by \_\_\_\_\_ women.



## Word Forms

There is always a noun after an article. There might be an adjective before the noun.

Women do most of the **housework**.

An illiterate **person** cannot read or write.

Choose a word from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	publish	publication publisher	published	
2.	pass	passage		
3.		(il)literacy	(il)literate	
4.	position	position		
5.		agriculture	agricultural	agriculturally
6.		official	official	officially

1. *Newsweek* is a popular \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The government \_\_\_\_\_ a law requiring equal pay for equal work. The \_\_\_\_\_ of this law made many people happy.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ is not a problem in Japan.
4. For the photograph, he \_\_\_\_\_ himself between his two daughters.
5. Very few people work in \_\_\_\_\_ in northern Russia. It is not an \_\_\_\_\_ area.
6. My brother is a government \_\_\_\_\_. He says you can't get into a government building without \_\_\_\_\_ papers.





## Connecting Words

Use the word **but** to connect a sentence from the second column with one from the first column. Use a comma before **but**. Write the new sentences on a separate piece of paper.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Some of the news in the reports is positive.       | a. Only 41% go to school.                             |
| 2. Half of the world's children are girls.            | b. They use the most natural resources.               |
| 3. Many women work outside the home.                  | c. It can be increased only a little.                 |
| 4. Rich countries have the fewest people.             | d. Some of it is bad.                                 |
| 5. It is possible to increase the amount of farmland. | e. Most of it is salt water.                          |
| 6. There is enough water in the world.                | f. Their husbands don't help them with the housework. |



## Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

1. Is it easy to change the life of women in a society? Give reasons for your answer.
2. In your country, is the life of a young woman today different from the lives of young women fifty years ago? Give examples.







## Before You Read

1. Do you have forests in your country? Describe them.
2. Compare the number of trees in your country today with the number of trees there 100 years ago. Do you think there are more trees, fewer trees, or about the same number?
3. What do you already know about tropical rain forests?



## Context Clues

The words in **bold print** below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

1. People cut down a quarter of the trees to make fields for their cattle. They cut down the **remaining** trees for fuel or to sell the wood or to start farms.
2. The world needs more food, and it seems like a good idea to **clear** the rain forests and use the land for agriculture.
3. One **surprising** thing about rain forests is that the land under them is not very good. Most people think it is, but it isn't.

# 4 Rain Forests



Tropical rain forests are found in the Amazon **region** area of South America, as well as in Central America, Africa, and Asia. Almost half of the rain forests are in Brazil.

- Tropical rain forests are very old, thick forests where it
- 5 rains more than 1.8 meters per year. The oldest rain forest in the world is in Sarawak. It is 10 million years old, and it has 2,500 different kinds of trees.

- In rain forests, there are huge trees forty-five meters high. The lowest **branches** of the trees are about ten
- 10 meters above the ground. Below the trees, there is another **level** of plants that consists of many kinds of smaller trees, shrubs, and flowers.



- Each level of the rain forest is its own world. The lower level is protected by the trees above. The
- 15 temperature and **humidity** (the amount of water, or **moisture**, in the air) stay about the same in the lower level. There is not much sunlight. In the upper level, the sun, rain, and wind change the temperature and humidity often.

- 20 An amazing animal world lives in the upper level. There are monkeys, members of the cat family, birds,



and insects **such as** bees, butterflies, and many kinds of flies. Other animals that usually live on the ground also live here—mice, ants, and even earthworms. **for example**

25 This upper level of the forest is thick with plant life because the trees are covered with other plants. Most plants get **nutrients** from the ground **through** their **roots**. These plants in the upper level take their nutrients from the trees they live on and from the other plants that die there. **food**

The animals in the rain forest need “streets” so that they can move along the upper level without going down to the ground. They make **paths** along the branches of the trees. A researcher found a path that stretched for eighteen meters in one tree. One kind of tiny ant makes a path only three millimeters wide. **narrow ways for walking**

Unfortunately, humans are still destroying the Earth’s tropical rain forests. Nearly 80,000 square kilometers are being destroyed every year. About a quarter of the **destruction** comes from people cutting down trees for fuel. Another quarter is to make grassland for their cattle. The **remaining** trees are cut down to sell the wood or to start farms.

The population in cities all over the world is growing, and more and more wood is needed to build huge new buildings. For example, 5,000 trees from the Sarawak rain forest in Malaysia were used to build just one tall building. If people continue cutting down that many trees in the Sarawak rain forest, all the trees could be gone in eight years.

The world needs more food, and it seems like a good idea to **clear** the rain forests and use the land for agriculture. Many people think that the land under these huge, thick forests must be very rich in nutrients, but it isn’t. This is another **surprising** thing about rain forests.

Most of the land in tropical rain forests is very poor. The plants are able to live because of all the dead **leaves** and other plant parts that fall to the ground. This **carpet** of dead plants provides nutrients for the living plants. **floor covering**

When the land is cleared for agriculture, there are





**no longer** any plants to die and provide nutrients for living plants. The cycle is broken. Agriculture is **unsuccessful** because the land cannot support it. Trees  
65 cannot grow again because the carpet of dead plants is gone. The land becomes **empty** and useless.

not any more

Why should it **matter** to a businessperson, a farmer, or a student that people are destroying rain forests thousands of kilometers away? For anyone who takes  
70 medicine, wears **running shoes**, or uses envelopes, the destruction of the rain forest does matter. Rain forests cover less than 6% of the Earth's area, but they have 100,000 kinds of plants, probably half of all the kinds of plants on the Earth. Three fourths of all known kinds  
75 of plants and animals call the rain forest their home.

Twenty percent of our different kinds of medicine come from rain forests. The glue on an envelope and in shoes comes from tropical plants. Rain forests provide materials for hundreds of other products.

80 Rain forests are also very important to the world's climate. The Amazon rain forest alone receives about 30 to 40% of the total rainfall on the Earth and produces about the same percentage of the world's **oxygen**. Many scientists believe that the decreasing size of rain forests  
85 will affect the climate on the Earth, making it uncomfortable or even dangerous for life.

The destruction of our rain forests is an international problem. One country—or even a few countries—cannot solve the problem alone. The nations of the world must  
90 work together to find a solution before it is too late.





## **a** Vocabulary

through	path	branch	such as
destruction	region	no longer	nutrients
humidity	remain	level	roots

1. The northern \_\_\_\_\_ of Canada is very cold.
2. He plans to \_\_\_\_\_ in Brazil for several years and then return to England.
3. When students do well in their English classes, they move up to the next \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Masako left the university to go back to Japan. She will \_\_\_\_\_ study English in an American classroom.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ of most plants are below the ground.
6. Anne and Ken like to walk on a \_\_\_\_\_ along the river in the evening.
7. A \_\_\_\_\_ is part of a tree.
8. All living things need \_\_\_\_\_ to live.
9. If you want to get to Canada from Mexico, you have to go \_\_\_\_\_ the United States.
10. The temperature and the \_\_\_\_\_ are both high in Malaysia.

## **b** Vocabulary

cleared	surprise	nutrients	path
successful	matter	moisture	destruction
oxygen (O)	such as	carpet	leaves

1. After dinner, they \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes from the table.
2. The living room has a wood floor, but the bedroom has a \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the rain forests should be a concern for everyone.
4. It doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ to me if we stay at home or go to a movie.



5. \_\_\_\_\_ is necessary for life.
6. People in Latin American countries \_\_\_\_\_ Ecuador, Peru, and Venezuela speak Spanish.
7. In cold climates, trees drop their \_\_\_\_\_ in the winter.
8. He's a \_\_\_\_\_ businessperson because he works very hard.
9. It was a \_\_\_\_\_ to see him at the party because he rarely goes out.
10. The amount of \_\_\_\_\_ in the air is called humidity.



### Vocabulary Review: Synonyms

*Match the words that mean the same.*

- |                     |                |
|---------------------|----------------|
| _____ 1. gradually  | a. very        |
| _____ 2. nearly     | b. slowly      |
| _____ 3. such as    | c. almost      |
| _____ 4. extremely  | d. not old     |
| _____ 5. enclose    | e. about       |
| _____ 6. surprising | f. for example |
| _____ 7. fresh      | g. unexpected  |
| _____ 8. turn into  | h. become      |
| _____ 9. humid      | i. moist       |
| _____ 10. roughly   | j. surround    |



### True/False/Not Enough Information

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Some rain forests are not in the tropics.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. There is more change in weather in the upper level of a rain forest than in the lower level.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. In the upper level, some plants support the life of other plants.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Plants get nutrients through their branches.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. People destroy about 20,000 square kilometers of tropical rain forest every year so that they can burn the wood.



- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. The land in tropical rain forests is rich.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Tropical rain forest land can support forests although it cannot support agriculture.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Material from rain forests is used to make cassette tapes.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Earthworms make paths on the branches of trees in rain forests.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. There are rain forests in Brazil.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 11. Rain forests have 100,000 kinds of plants.

### **Comprehension Questions**

1. How is the weather in the lower level of a rain forest different from the weather in the upper level?
2. Why is it amazing to find mice and earthworms in the upper level?
3. Where do most plants in the upper level get their nutrients?
4. Why do people cut down trees in rain forests?
5. Where do plants in the lower level get their nutrients?
6. What happens to the land when the trees are cut down?
7. Why are rain forests important to the world's climate?
8. What are some other reasons that rain forests are important to all of us?

### **Paraphrasing**

*Use your own words to say the ideas found in these sentences from the text. It is not necessary to use the same number of sentences. You may use more.*

1. The plants in the upper level take their nutrients from the trees they live on and from the other plants that die there.
2. When the land is cleared for agriculture, there are no longer any plants to die and provide nutrients for living plants.

### **g Main Idea**

1. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 3 (lines 13–19)?
2. Write your own sentence for the main idea of paragraph 13 (lines 87–90).





## Cause and Effect

Match the causes in the first column with the effects in the second column. Write the letter of the effect by the number of the cause.

Cause	Effect
— 1. There are fewer rain forests.	a. The weather doesn't change much in the lower level.
— 2. The trees are all cut down.	b. They make paths along branches.
— 3. A carpet of dead plants provides nutrients.	c. This may affect the climate on the Earth.
— 4. Animals want to travel in the upper level.	d. Tropical plants can live on poor land.
— 5. The lower level is protected by the upper level.	e. Tropical land becomes useless.



## Word Forms

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.		tropics	tropical	
2.	humidify	humidity	humid	
3.	moisten	moisture	moist	
4.	empty	emptiness	empty	
5.	destroy	destruction	destructive	destructively
6.	surprise	surprise	surprising	surprisingly
7.	remain	remainder	remaining	
8.	succeed	success	successful	successfully

- Indonesia is in the \_\_\_\_\_.
- It's hot and \_\_\_\_\_ today.





3. It's rainy today, and my skin is \_\_\_\_\_.
4. After the children left, there was an \_\_\_\_\_ in the house.
5. War is \_\_\_\_\_. It takes human life and \_\_\_\_\_ cities, villages, and agricultural land.
6. The beauty of the forest \_\_\_\_\_ me. It is a \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful place.
7. We ate half of the salad and put the \_\_\_\_\_ in the refrigerator.
8. She \_\_\_\_\_ flew the plane across the country. After her \_\_\_\_\_ trip, her friends had a big party.



## Noun Substitutes

*Find each noun substitute in the reading. Decide what it is a substitute for. It is usually a substitute for one word, but it might be a substitute for a whole sentence.*

In parts of Africa, this is a typical day for a village woman. At 4:45 a.m., **she** gets up, washes, and eats. (**She** is a substitute for a **village woman**.)

1. page 90 line 28    their    \_\_\_\_\_
2. page 90 line 29    they    \_\_\_\_\_
3. page 90 line 30    there    \_\_\_\_\_
4. page 90 line 32    they    \_\_\_\_\_
5. page 90 line 55    it    \_\_\_\_\_
6. page 90 line 55    this    \_\_\_\_\_
7. page 91 line 64    it    \_\_\_\_\_
8. page 91 line 72    they    \_\_\_\_\_



## Articles

*Put an article in each blank if it is necessary.*

1. Below \_\_\_\_\_ trees, there is another level of plants.
2. Each level of \_\_\_\_\_ rain forest is its own world.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ temperature and humidity (amount of water, or moisture, in the air) stay about \_\_\_\_\_ same.



4. In \_\_\_\_\_ upper level, \_\_\_\_\_ sun, \_\_\_\_\_ rain, and wind change \_\_\_\_\_ temperature and humidity often.
5. Most plants get \_\_\_\_\_ nutrients from \_\_\_\_\_ ground through their roots.
6. These plants in \_\_\_\_\_ upper level take their nutrients from \_\_\_\_\_ trees they live on and from \_\_\_\_\_ other plants that die there.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ researcher found \_\_\_\_\_ path that stretched for \_\_\_\_\_ eighteen meters in one tree.
8. One kind of \_\_\_\_\_ tiny ant makes \_\_\_\_\_ path only three millimeters wide.

## **I** Guided Writing

*Write one of these two short compositions.*

1. Why are rain forests important?
2. You are walking through a rain forest. Describe what you see, hear, smell, and touch.



# The Garbage Project



## Before You Read

1. The photograph on this page shows a landfill. Based on the photograph, how would you define a landfill?
2. Where do people in your country put old cars, old newspapers, and old clothes?
3. What do you do with food that is no longer fresh?

## Context Clues

The words in bold print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

1. **Archaeologists** study buried houses, broken objects, and other old things to learn about ancient societies.
2. Students had to travel to **landfills**, where cities bury the things they don't want.
3. Many of the things we throw away, such as newspapers, glass bottles, and some metals, are **recyclables**. We shouldn't throw them away.
4. We are in **deep** trouble. If we don't do something soon, it may be too late.
5. **Hazardous** materials contain poisonous chemicals.

## 5 The Garbage Project



Most **archaeologists** study buried houses, broken objects, and old **garbage** to learn important things about ancient societies. At the University of Arizona in the United States, however, archaeology students are

- 5 **investigating** today's garbage. They hope to learn important things about **modern** society by studying its garbage. The Garbage Project started at the University of Arizona in 1973. Since then, students have studied garbage in cities in the United States, Canada,
- 10 and Mexico.

- To study the modern world's garbage, students had to travel to **landfills**, the places where cities bury their garbage. While the students were studying the garbage, they wore special clothes and used safety equipment.
- 15 Students were also very careful when they opened bags of garbage.



garbage

today's





What have students in the Garbage Project learned from studying modern garbage? One important thing they learned is that the garbage in landfills disappears very slowly. That was surprising to the students, as well as to many scientists who had predicted that roughly 70% of the garbage in landfills would disappear naturally and quickly. Even in cities where it rains a lot, the students found newspapers from 1948, forty-year-old hot dogs, and lettuce from 1970.

The Garbage Project also **revealed** that what people say they do is often very different from what they **actually** do. The archaeology students asked people what they bought, ate, and drank, and then they compared this to what people threw away. For some reason, the two didn't match. For example, the students found many more empty bottles of alcohol than people said they drank.

Information from the Garbage Project has also helped us to see how much garbage we actually put in landfills. The students are hopeful that this will encourage us to find better ways to **dispose of** our garbage. Of course, the best way to dispose of garbage depends on what kind of garbage it is: regular garbage, **hazardous** materials, or **recyclables**, such as newspapers, glass bottles, and some metals. Regular garbage goes to regular landfills. Hazardous materials, **on the other hand**, contain poisonous chemicals or metals. They shouldn't go into regular landfills.

Ordinary houses are full of hazardous waste. The most problematic hazardous waste in homes is **batteries**. When batteries **end up** in a landfill, they often break open. The poison inside them moves through rain water and other liquids to the bottom of the landfill. Then it can pollute the natural water in the ground. People could avoid this problem by using **rechargeable** batteries.

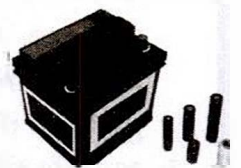
Another hazardous waste from homes is motor oil. When people pour old motor oil on the ground or throw it in the garbage, it poisons the environment. They should recycle old motor oil instead.

showed

really

throw away

dangerous



batteries



Unfortunately, recycling is expensive. It takes time, equipment, and special treatment. Toronto began the first recycling program in North America in 1982. The city started by recycling newspapers, and later it added glass and cans to its recycling program. When students from the Garbage Project studied the Toronto landfills, they found that recycling was having a positive effect. Since 1982, Toronto has reduced the amount of garbage going into its landfills by 25%.

A health official once said, "We're in deep trouble here. We have too much garbage, our landfills are closing, and we can't open new ones because people don't want them. If we don't do something about our garbage, we're going to be buried in it." The health official made that statement in 1889! Clearly, our garbage problem is not new, but as the world's population continues to grow, it will become a bigger and bigger problem.

serious

(This article is based on an interview with Dr. William Rathje, the director of the Garbage Project at the University of Arizona.)



## Vocabulary

dispose of    archaeologist    hazard    investigate  
waste    battery    landfill    modern  
reveals    actual    hopeful    on the other hand

1. I am not very \_\_\_\_\_ that people will start recycling more of their garbage.
2. The hole in the street is a \_\_\_\_\_ to cars.
3. That light won't work without a \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I know we make a lot of garbage, but I don't know the \_\_\_\_\_ amount.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ societies produce more hazardous waste than ancient societies did.
6. An \_\_\_\_\_ needs to have a strong interest in history.
7. Bottles, paper, and cans are examples of dry \_\_\_\_\_.
8. After you cut the grass, please do not put it into a bag and take it to the \_\_\_\_\_; spread it on the garden instead.
9. It is sometimes difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ an old automobile.
10. At the end of the movie, the hero \_\_\_\_\_ her true identity.

## Vocabulary

rechargeable    investigated    hazardous    on the other hand  
archaeologist    end up    actually    reveal  
recycle    deep    garbage    batteries

1. Don't throw that empty juice bottle away. We can \_\_\_\_\_ it.
2. They \_\_\_\_\_ the area for a week, but they couldn't find anything.
3. She didn't feel comfortable with him because he asked a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ questions.
4. I could stay home tomorrow and get some work done; \_\_\_\_\_, I could take the train to visit my family.
5. Putting out fires is \_\_\_\_\_ work.



6. They said they recycled all of their newspapers, but \_\_\_\_\_ they didn't recycle any at all.
7. The \_\_\_\_\_ for my new camera are \_\_\_\_\_.  
I just plug them in overnight, and in the morning they are as good as new.
8. That \_\_\_\_\_ smells terrible.
9. That woman is a famous \_\_\_\_\_. She discovered an ancient city.
10. I don't want to \_\_\_\_\_ in a boring job. I hope to find an exciting job.



### Vocabulary Review: Antonyms

*Match the words that mean the opposite.*

- |                         |                   |
|-------------------------|-------------------|
| _____ 1. get along      | a. literate       |
| _____ 2. remote         | b. on time        |
| _____ 3. separate       | c. increase       |
| _____ 4. illiterate     | d. underpopulated |
| _____ 5. roughly        | e. solid          |
| _____ 6. hollow         | f. combine        |
| _____ 7. delayed        | g. nearby         |
| _____ 8. no longer      | h. fight          |
| _____ 9. humid          | i. training       |
| _____ 10. decrease      | j. group          |
| _____ 11. overpopulated | k. exactly        |
|                         | l. still          |
|                         | m. dry            |



### Multiple Choice

1. The Garbage Project is \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. a university program    b. a type of landfill    c. both a and b
2. Poisonous chemicals pollute \_\_\_\_\_.  
a. water    b. wastes    c. batteries





3. The Garbage Project is more than \_\_\_\_\_ years old.
  - a. twenty
  - b. thirty
  - c. fifty
4. The first recycling program in North America was in \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. the United States
  - b. Mexico
  - c. Canada
5. Garbage in landfills disappears \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. slowly
  - b. completely
  - c. quickly
6. The most serious hazardous waste in homes is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. newspapers
  - b. batteries
  - c. motor oil
7. The Garbage Project showed that people \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. don't know where their garbage goes
  - b. sometimes say one thing and do something else
  - c. cannot change their behavior toward garbage
8. Hazardous waste comes from \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. ordinary houses
  - b. factories
  - c. both a and b

### Comprehension Questions

*Use the text to answer these questions.*

1. Name two kinds of hazardous waste in homes.
2. Why is hazardous waste dangerous?
3. Why did students use safety equipment when they went to the landfills?
4. What is the best way to dispose of garbage?
5. What is the connection between the Garbage Project and archaeology?
6. Why did the Garbage Project go to Toronto?
7. What are three things that we can recycle?
8. Do you think the problem of disposing of garbage is serious? Give a reason for your answer.

### Main Idea

1. Write a sentence that gives the main idea for the paragraph that starts on line 17.
2. Which sentence is the main idea of the last paragraph?





## Two-Word Verbs

- check in = tell the airline that you are there for the flight or tell the hotel that you are there for your room
- drop out = stop going (for example, to school)
- get through = finish
- put back = put (something) where it was before or where it belongs
- think over = think about carefully

1. I can't give you my answer right away. I have to \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_.
2. You have to \_\_\_\_\_ at the airport forty-five minutes before your flight leaves.
3. Did you \_\_\_\_\_ with your homework yet?
4. David didn't finish college. He \_\_\_\_\_ after his second year.
5. Please \_\_\_\_\_ the food \_\_\_\_\_ in the refrigerator. Don't leave it out on the table.



## Compound Words

Use a word from the first column and one from the second column to make a one-word or two-word compound. (More than one answer may be possible.)

- |       |             |               |
|-------|-------------|---------------|
| _____ | 1. work     | a. report     |
| _____ | 2. search   | b. land       |
| _____ | 3. fire     | c. bag        |
| _____ | 4. food     | d. work       |
| _____ | 5. half     | e. light      |
| _____ | 6. sun      | f. place      |
| _____ | 7. house    | g. production |
| _____ | 8. research | h. party      |
| _____ | 9. garbage  | i. wood       |
| _____ | 10. farm    | j. way        |
|       |             | k. worker     |



## Connecting Words

Use *and* to connect a sentence from the first column with a sentence from the second column. Use a comma before *and*. Write your answers on a separate piece of paper.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Studying old garbage can teach us about ancient societies.              | a. They open bags of garbage very carefully.                                  |
| 2. Students in the Garbage Project wear safety equipment.                  | b. Studying fresh garbage can teach us about modern society.                  |
| 3. We dispose of regular garbage in regular landfills.                     | c. It can pollute the natural water in the ground.                            |
| 4. Hazardous waste contains poisonous chemicals.                           | d. We should dispose of hazardous waste in special landfills or by recycling. |
| 5. The poison inside batteries can go to the bottom of a regular landfill. | e. We must keep it out of regular landfills.                                  |

## Main Idea

What is the main idea of paragraph 6 (lines 45–52)?

## Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

1. Describe the Garbage Project. Tell what it is, who is in it, what they do, and why.
2. What kind of hazardous waste do we have in our homes, and how can we dispose of it?



# Video Highlights

## **a** Before You Watch

1. In Lesson 3, you read about women in different parts of the world. Write two facts you remember about women and education.
  - a. \_\_\_\_\_
  - b. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Read the dictionary definition of *obey*. Do you always obey your parents? What happened when you disobeyed your parents? Discuss with a partner.

**obey** /ou' bei, ə-/ *v.* [I;T] **obeyed, obeying, obeys**  
to do what is asked or ordered: *Soldiers obey their commander's orders.*

## **b** As You Watch

In this video you will meet a girl named Lalita. Watch the video and decide if the sentences are true or false. If the sentence is false, correct the mistake.

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Lalita lives in Pakistan.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Only one in four girls goes to school where Lalita lives.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Lalita disobeyed her parents.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. She went to a village school when she was 13.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Lalita went to a special boarding school when she was 18.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Lalita teaches karate now.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Lalita's parents are happy that she goes to school now.







## After You Watch

1. What was life like for Lalita, her parents, and her village before she went to school? What is life like now? Write notes in the chart. Discuss your answers in class.

Before	After

2. Circle adjectives that you think describe Lalita. Discuss in class why you chose those words.

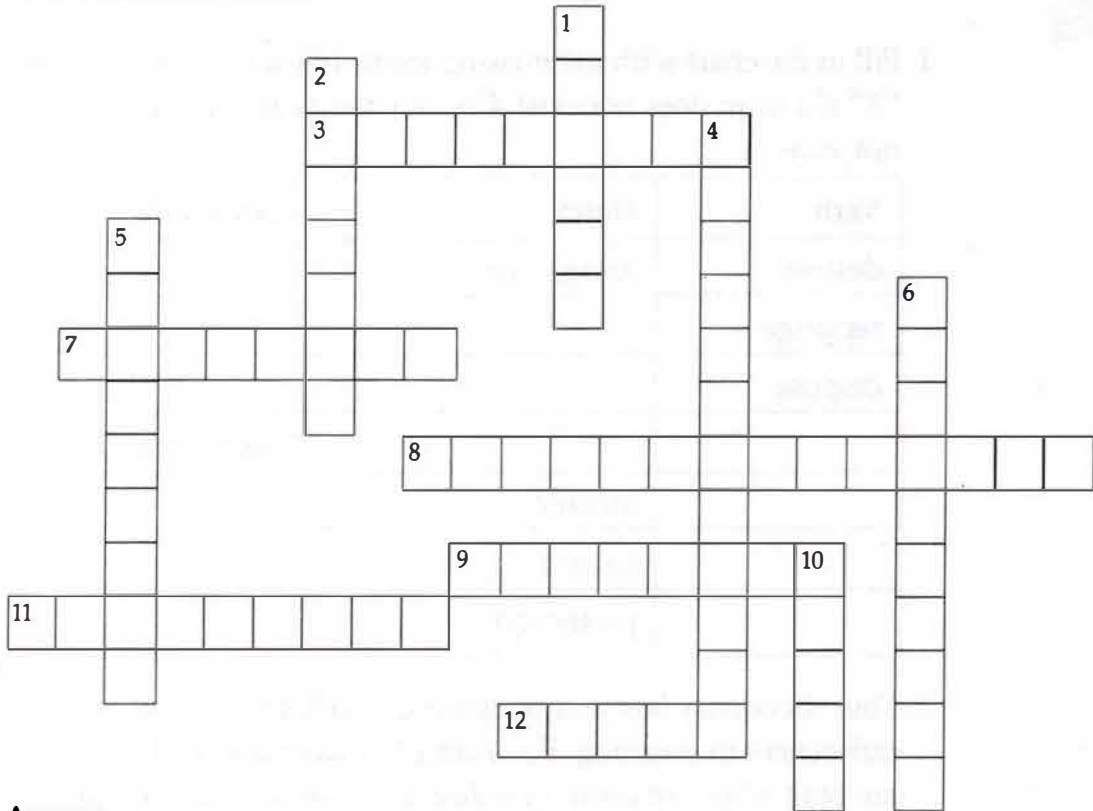
brave      proud      clever      shy      weak  
 positive      successful      modern      expert      kind  
 normal      strong      rude      wealthy      lonely

3. Using the words in Exercise 2, write sentences describing Lalita.

*Example:* Lalita is proud because she helped many girls in her village.



## Crossword Puzzle



### Across

3. Another word for dangerous is \_\_\_\_\_.
7. More than half of something is a \_\_\_\_\_.
8. People who study old things are called \_\_\_\_\_.
9. The opposite of *negative* is \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Your aunts, uncles, and cousins are your \_\_\_\_\_.
12. The \_\_\_\_\_ of a plant are usually under the ground.

### Down

1. The opposite of *ancient* is \_\_\_\_\_.
2. A \_\_\_\_\_ pain is a long-lasting pain.
4. People who study how societies work are called \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Another word for *slowly* is \_\_\_\_\_.
6. An \_\_\_\_\_ person is someone who can't read.
10. The opposite of *full* is \_\_\_\_\_.



# Dictionary Page

## Working with Word Forms

1. Fill in the chart with the missing forms of each word. Write an "X" if a form does not exist. Check your dictionary if you are not sure.

Verb	Noun	Adjective
destroy	<i>destruction</i>	<i>destructive</i>
recharge		
dispose		
		surprising
	literacy	
	hazard	
	protection	

2. Your dictionary has sample sentences to help you understand differences in meaning. For example, *industrious* and *industrial* are both adjective forms of *industry*. However, they are not used in the same way. Read these sentences to understand the difference:

Ali is wealthy because he is so *industrious*.

Tokyo is a modern, *industrial* city.

3. Use the information on this page to help you complete these sentences.

*Example:* Floods and earthquakes can cause a lot of destruction.

- Most parents will do everything they can to \_\_\_\_\_ their children from harm.
- A \_\_\_\_\_ person can read and write.
- \_\_\_\_\_ materials are dangerous.
- It is important for people to \_\_\_\_\_ of their waste in ways that will not harm the environment.

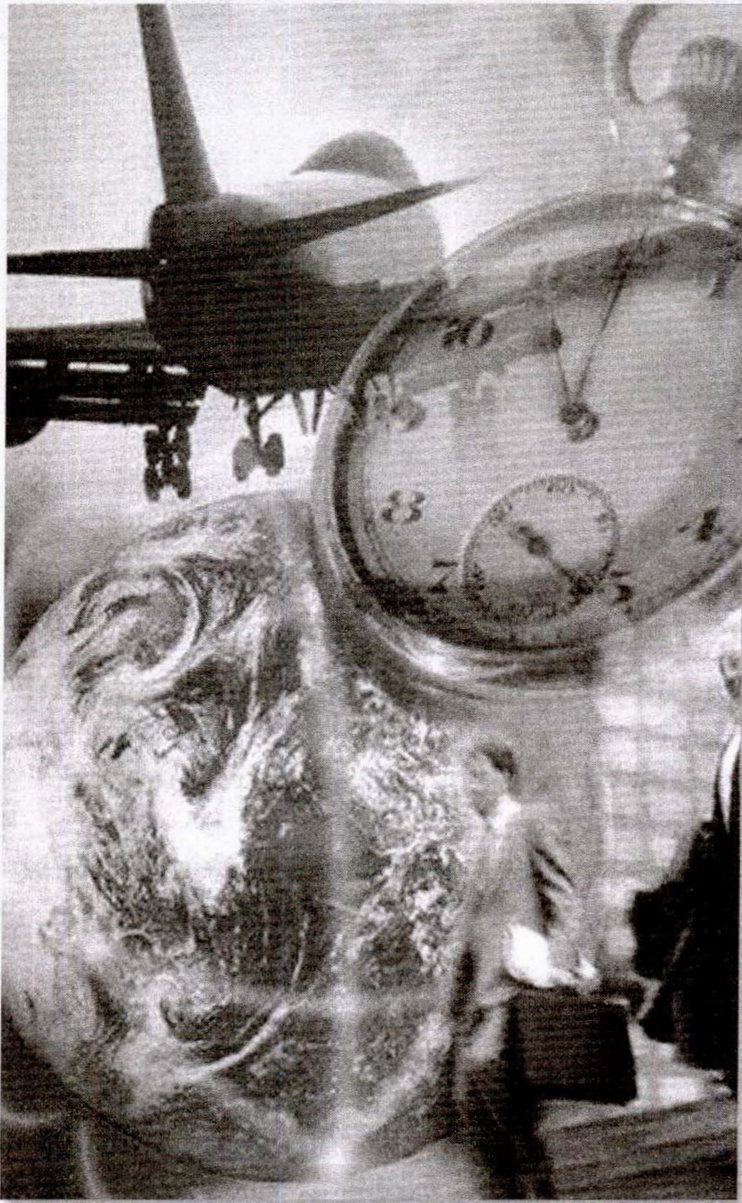




# A Mishmash, or Hodgepodge

unit  
3

*The world is so full of a number of things,  
I'm sure we should all be as happy as kings.*  
—Robert Louis Stevenson





lesson

1

# Roadrunners



## Before You Read

1. How would you describe this bird to another person?
2. Why do you think this bird is called a roadrunner?
3. What would you like to find out about this kind of bird?



## Context Clues

The words in **bold print** below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

1. Roadrunners live in the desert **zone** of the southwestern United States.
2. A roadrunner eats plants **once in a while**, but it is mostly a meat eater.
3. The bird doesn't always eat the food right there. Sometimes it **carries** the food home.
4. Most of its **diet** is insects, but it also catches birds, mice, and other small animals.
5. The male bird gives the female bird **presents** such as twigs (tiny branches of a tree) or something to eat.

# 1 Roadrunners



If you say the word *roadrunner* to people in the United States, they will probably think of a famous cartoon program that was on television. In the cartoon, a funny-looking bird was always outsmarting a coyote.

- 5 The bird in this cartoon program was based on a bird called a roadrunner.

Real roadrunners live in the desert **zone** of the southwestern United States and northern Mexico. A roadrunner is a bird, but it can fly only about as much  
10 as a chicken can. People gave it its name because they usually see it running across a road, but, of course, a roadrunner spends more time among the plants of the desert than it does on roads.

The roadrunner is quite a large bird—about  
15 forty-five centimeters long and twenty-five centimeters high. People laugh when it runs because it looks so funny. It holds its head **straight** out in front, and its tail

not curved or bent



sticks straight out in back. It takes long steps and can run 30 kilometers an hour.

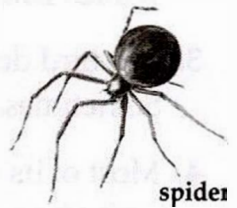
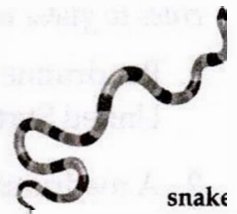
20 A roadrunner eats an amazing variety of food. Most of its **diet** is insects, but it also catches birds, mice, and other small animals. It is even brave enough to catch tarantulas, **snakes**, and black widow **spiders**.  
25 A roadrunner eats plants **once in a while**, but it is mostly a meat eater. The bird doesn't always eat the food right there. Sometimes it carries the food home.

In the spring, a male roadrunner begins looking for a female to be his **mate**. When he finds one, he gives her  
30 **presents**—snakes to eat or twigs (tiny branches of a tree) to use in building a **nest**. After they build their nest, the female lays eggs and the male and female raise their young.

Some roadrunners become very friendly with  
35 people. One couple in Arizona feeds a pair of roadrunners that come to their house every day. One at a time, each bird makes a noise outside the window. If someone doesn't immediately give the bird a piece of hamburger, the bird **knocks** on the window with its  
40 beak. According to this couple, the birds behave like a pet dog or cat. For example, when the woman **whistles**, the birds come running. When the man leaves the house, the roadrunners walk along behind him. Clearly, roadrunners are not **shy**.

45 Another couple in Arizona feeds a pair of roadrunners that come right into their house. The two birds will stand on a chair or table and watch television, and they seem really interested in what is happening on the program. In the spring, the male sometimes  
50 brings gifts to the couple—an insect, or a leaf or twig for building a nest.

In the winter, when nighttime temperatures in the desert can be 20°C colder than daytime temperatures, a roadrunner lowers its body temperature during the  
55 night to save body heat. In the morning, however, the bird needs to warm up quickly so that it can run if it needs to. To warm up quickly, the roadrunner stands



makes a sound by blowing air through the lips



with its back to the sun. It holds out its wings and **lifts** the feathers on its upper back. Under these  
60 feathers, there is a dark **spot** on the bird's skin. This spot collects heat from the weak morning sun and quickly warms the bird's body and raises its body temperature.

Some people in Mexican villages use roadrunner  
65 meat as medicine. They believe that because roadrunners can eat poisonous animals and not die, their meat should be good for human sickness.

**Maybe** we shouldn't laugh at the roadrunner. **perhaps**  
**Even though** it looks funny when it runs, it has **although**  
70 developed a special way to keep warm, and it can eat poisonous animals. It can even make friends with humans. It **fits** into its environment very well, and it doesn't matter that it looks funny.

## **a** Vocabulary

present	diet	straight	shy
mate	knock	fit	lift
even though	snakes	maybe	whistled

1. Some \_\_\_\_\_ are dangerous, but most are not.
2. Both the female bird and her \_\_\_\_\_ take care of the young.
3. On the \_\_\_\_\_ part of the road, people drive a lot faster.
4. Tourists don't usually \_\_\_\_\_ into their surroundings because they talk and act differently than everyone else.
5. The class is going to walk to the museum \_\_\_\_\_ it is raining hard.
6. The majority of people in China live on a \_\_\_\_\_ based on rice and vegetables.
7. I thought it was a roadrunner, but \_\_\_\_\_ it wasn't.
8. John \_\_\_\_\_ for a taxi, and one stopped.
9. I can \_\_\_\_\_ the box, but I can't carry it very far.
10. When she finished college, Joan received a car from her parents as a \_\_\_\_\_.





**b****Vocabulary**

knock	carries	spot	once in a while
spider	shy	stick out	lifts
fits	snakes	nest	zones

- The largest \_\_\_\_\_ in the world are more than thirty feet long.
- When I heard a \_\_\_\_\_ at the door, I went to answer it.
- Mary watches television a lot, but she goes to the movies only \_\_\_\_\_.
- An insect has six legs; a \_\_\_\_\_ has eight.
- Don't \_\_\_\_\_ your tongue; it is very impolite.
- Jean has a \_\_\_\_\_ on her new shirt, and she can't get it out.
- The Earth has several different temperature \_\_\_\_\_.
- He usually \_\_\_\_\_ his wallet in his pocket.
- Birds build a \_\_\_\_\_ in the spring.
- Even though she is very \_\_\_\_\_, she is good at making speeches.

**C****Vocabulary Review: Definitions**

Match the words with their definitions.

- |                        |                                       |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| _____ 1. hazardous     | a. print and distribute books         |
| _____ 2. literate      | b. moisture in the air                |
| _____ 3. landfill      | c. someone who studies ancient things |
| _____ 4. humidity      | d. someone who studies families       |
| _____ 5. publish       | e. for example                        |
| _____ 6. region        | f. having nothing inside              |
| _____ 7. archaeologist | g. able to read and write             |
| _____ 8. recyclable    | h. area                               |
| _____ 9. empty         | i. very dangerous                     |
| _____ 10. such as      | j. domestic                           |
|                        | k. a place for garbage                |
|                        | l. able to be used more than once     |



## **d** True/False/Not Enough Information

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. The roadrunner runs around the desert, looking for food.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Roadrunners live only in Mexico and the United States.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. The female gives the male gifts in the spring.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. A roadrunner is afraid of people and stays away from them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. This bird can learn to depend on people.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. A big difference between daytime and nighttime temperatures is typical in the desert.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. A roadrunner uses a lot of energy keeping warm in winter.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The roadrunner is a typical bird.



## Comprehension Questions

1. Explain why the roadrunner is not a typical bird.
2. What does a roadrunner eat?
3. Why does a male give gifts to a female?
4. Why do people laugh at the roadrunner?
5. Explain how the roadrunner gets warm in winter.
6. Do you think sick people will get better if they eat roadrunner meat?  
Explain your answer.
7. Do you think it is a good idea to feed wild animals? Give a reason.
8. Explain how a roadrunner fits into its environment.

## **f** Main Idea

Many paragraphs have one sentence that gives the main idea. It can be in different places in a paragraph.

1. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 4 (lines 20–27)?
2. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 6 (lines 34–44)?
3. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 9 (lines 64–67)?
4. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 10 (lines 68–73)?



Nouns are often used to describe other nouns. The meaning is different than when the adjective form of the same word is used.

Cuba had a **literacy** program in the 1960s.

A **literate** person can read and write.

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns. Then circle any nouns in the sentences that describe another noun.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.		environment	environmental	environmentally
2.	complicate	complication	(un)complicated	
3.	hope	hope	hopeful hopeless	hopefully
4.	waste	waste	wasteful	wastefully
5.	dispose	disposal	disposable	
6.	depend (on)	(in)dependence	(in)dependent	(in)dependently
7.	succeed	success	successful	successfully
8.	vary	variety variation	various	
9.	finance	finances	financial	financially
10.	know	knowledge	(un)known knowledgeable	(un)knowingly knowledgeably

1. Water pollution is an \_\_\_\_\_ problem.
2. This is a \_\_\_\_\_ problem, and I can't find the solution.
3. There was a bad accident on the highway this morning. I am \_\_\_\_\_ that no one died.
4. Some \_\_\_\_\_ products from factories can be reused.



5. Doctors and dentists use \_\_\_\_\_ gloves so that they don't spread disease from one patient to another.
6. Instead of working in groups, we are supposed to work \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The movie was a huge \_\_\_\_\_, making its director a happy and rich person.
8. A supermarket sells a large \_\_\_\_\_ of products.
9. If you don't stop spending so much money, you are going to have serious \_\_\_\_\_ problems.
10. Barbara is very \_\_\_\_\_ about birds. She has been studying them for years.



## Prepositions

*Put a preposition in each blank.*

1. The bird \_\_\_\_\_ this cartoon program was based \_\_\_\_\_ a bird called a roadrunner.
2. Roadrunners live \_\_\_\_\_ the desert zone \_\_\_\_\_ the United States and Mexico.
3. It spends more time \_\_\_\_\_ the plants \_\_\_\_\_ the desert than it does \_\_\_\_\_ roads.
4. Once \_\_\_\_\_ a while, it eats plants.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ the spring, a male roadrunner begins looking \_\_\_\_\_ a mate.
6. Roadrunners can also become friendly \_\_\_\_\_ people.
7. The birds come one \_\_\_\_\_ a time and make a noise \_\_\_\_\_ the window.
8. The bird knocks \_\_\_\_\_ the window \_\_\_\_\_ its beak.
9. These birds come right \_\_\_\_\_ the house.
10. They seem really interested \_\_\_\_\_ what is happening \_\_\_\_\_ the program.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ the winter, nighttime temperatures \_\_\_\_\_ the desert can be 20°C colder than daytime temperatures.
12. To warm up quickly, the roadrunner stands \_\_\_\_\_ its back \_\_\_\_\_ the sun.





## Connecting Words

Use *even though* to connect a sentence from the first column with one from the second column. Write the new sentences on a separate sheet of paper.

- |   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| 1. A roadrunner is considered to be a bird. | a. They have plants.               |
| 2. The Garbage Project studies landfills.   | b. It is sometimes dangerous.      |
| 3. Rain forests cannot support agriculture. | c. They work outside the home too. |
| 4. We still use petroleum in cars.          | d. We know it pollutes the air.    |
| 5. Women do most of the domestic work.      | e. It can't fly very far.          |

## j Summarizing

Which sentence is the best summary?

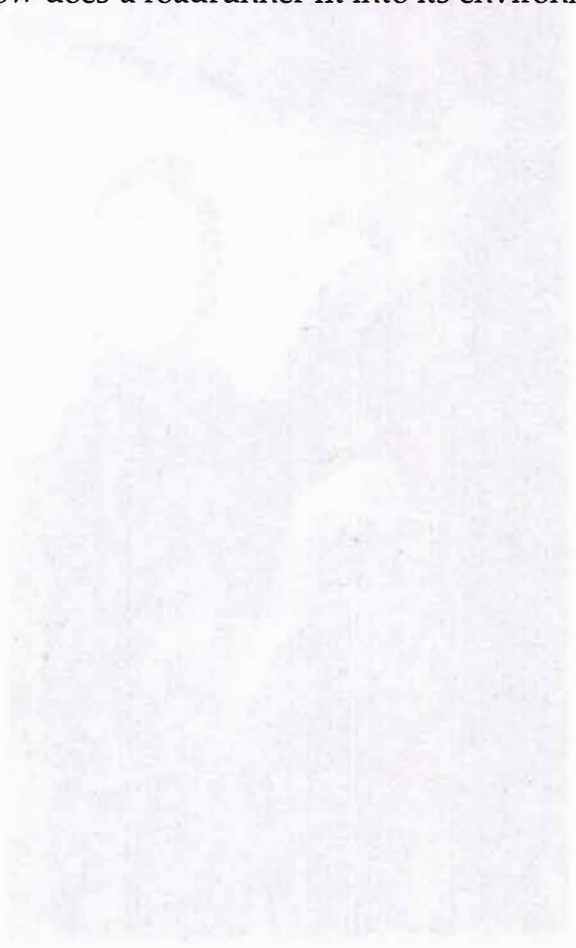
- Paragraph 4 (lines 20–27)
  - It eats insects, mice, and other small animals.
  - It eats both plants and meat.
  - It eats a large variety of food, both plants and meat.
- Paragraphs 6 and 7 (lines 34–51)
  - Roadrunners follow people, ask for food, and watch television.
  - Roadrunners can become friendly with people.
  - Roadrunners sometimes bring gifts to people.
- Paragraph 8 (lines 52–63)
  - Temperatures are much colder at night than during the day.
  - A roadrunner has an unusual way to keep warm in winter.
  - A roadrunner collects heat from the sun through a black spot on its back.



## Guided Writing

*Write one of these two short compositions.*

1. Describe a roadrunner. Include the three most interesting things about a roadrunner, in your opinion.
2. Exactly how does a roadrunner fit into its environment?



# Afraid to Fly



## Before You Read

1. What are some common problems airplane passengers have?
2. What makes you nervous when you are flying in an airplane?
3. Do any of these things make you nervous—standing on the roof of a building, giving a speech, snakes, or spiders?



## Context Clues

The words in **bold print** below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

1. It's smart to be afraid of some things. For example, being afraid of poisonous spiders is **logical**.
2. Some people are afraid of going through a **tunnel** on a highway.
3. A plane **crash** is always in the news, but we never hear about the millions of flights every year that are safe.
4. They listen to a tape recording of an airplane **takeoff** and landing at an airport.

## 2 Afraid to Fly



How do you feel about flying in an airplane? Do you find it boring, exciting, or downright **terrifying**? People who have to fly all the time for business often find it boring. People who fly only once in a while think it's exciting. However, some people feel only terror when they get on an airplane. Their **fear** of flying can prevent them from traveling to other countries or visiting friends far away.

very frightening

It's smart to be afraid of some things. For example, being afraid of poisonous spiders is **logical**. However, if you are afraid of all spiders, even **harmless** ones, you have an illogical fear, or a **phobia**. Three common phobias are fear of **heights**, fear of being enclosed in a small area, and fear of being in a large open area. It is not logical to be afraid of these things when there is no danger, but a phobia is not logical.

not dangerous

plural noun for *high*

Fear of flying is another phobia. A plane **crash** is always in the news, but we never hear about the





millions of flights every year that are safe. Riding in a  
20 car is thirty times more dangerous than flying, but most  
of us are not afraid every time we get into a car. It is not  
logical to be afraid of flying, but research indicates that  
about 12% of people have this fear.

People with a phobia about flying are afraid for one  
25 or more reasons. They might be afraid of heights.  
People who have a fear of heights avoid high places,  
and if they are in a high-rise building, they don't look  
out the windows.

They might also be afraid of being in an enclosed  
30 place like an elevator or a **tunnel** on a highway. When  
they get on an airplane, they can't get out until the end  
of the flight, and the flight might last several hours.

People with a fear of flying might be afraid of the  
crowds and all the noise and people rushing around at  
35 an airport. This especially **bothers** older people.

Some people are afraid of the unknown. They don't  
understand the technology of flying and can't believe  
that a huge airplane can stay up in the air.

Others are afraid of **loss** of control. They need to  
40 control every **situation** they are in. When they drive a  
car, they have some chance of avoiding an **accident**. In  
a plane, they have no control over anything. It terrifies  
them to give up control to the pilot and the rest  
of the crew.

45 For some people, a fear of flying is not important  
because they don't really need to fly. But what about  
someone who works for an international company?  
What about an entertainer who has to sing in twenty  
different places in a month? These people have to fly if  
50 they want to continue in their professions.

There is help for these people. There are special  
classes in which people learn how to control their fear.  
They probably can't lose it, but they can learn to control  
it. Then they can fly when they need to, even though  
55 they probably won't enjoy it.

The class visits an airport and learns how airplane  
**traffic** is controlled and how planes are kept in safe  
condition. A pilot talks about flying through storms, the



tunnel

noun for lose



different noises an airplane makes, and air safety in  
60 **general**. The class learns to do relaxation exercises, and  
the people talk about their fear.

Next, the class listens to tape recordings of a **takeoff**  
and landing, and later the people ride in a plane on the  
ground around the airport. Finally, they are ready to  
65 take a short flight.

The **instructors** of these classes are sometimes **teachers**  
**psychologists**. They say that between 80 and 90% of the  
people who take the classes are successful. They still  
have their phobia, but they learn to control their fear.  
70 Some of them even learn to enjoy flying.



## Vocabulary

terror	height	fear	logical
situation	crash	takeoff	tunnels
harm	bother	phobia	losses

1. A plane \_\_\_\_\_ usually kills a lot of people.
2. Tom found himself in a difficult \_\_\_\_\_, and he didn't know what to do.
3. A \_\_\_\_\_ is an illogical fear of something.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ is a very strong word for *fear*.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ is the feeling you have when you are afraid.
6. Ali's company had so many financial \_\_\_\_\_ that it went out of business.
7. Some dogs bite, but most of them won't \_\_\_\_\_ anyone.
8. There are several \_\_\_\_\_ under the rivers from Manhattan Island to New Jersey and the other parts of New York.
9. After \_\_\_\_\_, the airplane crew usually brings around drinks and food.
10. What is the \_\_\_\_\_ of the tallest building in your city?



## **b** Vocabulary

bother	accidents	tunnels	psycho
terrified	traffic	in general	harmle
logical	instructor	terrifying	

1. There is a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ on the roads between 4 and 5 when people leave work to go home.
2. Anne was \_\_\_\_\_ when she saw a car coming straight at her.
3. Many more people die in car \_\_\_\_\_ than in plane crashes.
4. A \_\_\_\_\_ can help you learn to control your fear.
5. An \_\_\_\_\_ is a teacher.
6. It's raining today, but \_\_\_\_\_ the weather here is perfect.
7. What is the \_\_\_\_\_ thing to do when the telephone rings?
8. For some people, descending to the ocean floor would be a \_\_\_\_\_ experience.
9. Most snakes are \_\_\_\_\_; only a few kinds are poisonous.
10. Please don't \_\_\_\_\_ me now. I'm busy.

## **c** Vocabulary Review

*Cross out the word that does not belong with the other two.*

1. roots, snakes, branches
2. once, couple, pair
3. knock, touch, run
4. threaten, take care of, help
5. even, even though, although
6. often, sometimes, once in a while
7. pollution, surroundings, environment
8. twenty-five, two-thirds, 40%
9. hazardous, dangerous, positive
10. married, divorced, published





## Multiple Choice

1. \_\_\_\_\_ may think flying is boring.
  - a. People who fly once in a while
  - b. People who fly often
  - c. People who have a phobia about flying
2. A phobia is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. positive
  - b. illogical
  - c. chemical
3. About \_\_\_\_\_ of people are afraid to fly.
  - a. 6%
  - b. 12%
  - c. 15%
4. A person with a fear of enclosed places doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. walking on a path
  - b. high places
  - c. being in a tunnel
5. \_\_\_\_\_ especially bother older people.
  - a. Crowds at airports
  - b. High-rise buildings
  - c. Spiders
6. A fear of flying is not important to some people because \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. they are entertainers
  - b. they don't need to fly
  - c. they can take a class about flying
7. The instructor of a class for people who are afraid of flying \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. explains about airplane crashes
  - b. learns to relax
  - c. takes them to an airport
8. More than \_\_\_\_\_ of the people who take these classes are successful.
  - a. 12%
  - b. 80%
  - c. 90%





## Comprehension Questions

1. Have you ever flown in an airplane? If you have, when was the last time you flew?
2. What are two examples of phobias?
3. Why aren't most people afraid when they get into a car?
4. Give four reasons people are afraid of flying.
5. Give four examples of people who need to fly.
6. What are three things that people learn in a class for those who are afraid of flying?
7. How does learning how airplane traffic is controlled help people who are afraid of flying?
8. Why does the class learn about the different noises a plane makes?
9. How do relaxation exercises help the people in the class?

## Main Idea

1. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 8 (lines 39–44)?
2. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 11 (lines 56–61)?
3. Write a sentence for the main idea of the last paragraph.

## Word Forms: Adverbs

Adverbs describe verbs. They also describe adjectives and other adverbs. Many adverbs end in **-ly**— for example, **badly** and **nicely**. But there also are a few adjectives that end in **-ly**—for example, **friendly** and **lovely**. There are also some common adverbs that do not end in **-ly**, such as **fast** and **hard**.

Please return to the office **immediately**.

Your solution to this math problem is **completely** wrong.

Ali worked **especially** hard today.

Ann is a **friendly** person.

Mike works **hard** at his job.



Sometimes an adverb or an adverbial phrase describes the whole sentence. It is followed by a comma.

**Most importantly**, you must hand in a report of the meeting by tomorrow morning.

**Ordinarily**, the class finishes at 2:00. Today, it will last until 2:30 because we have a special lecture.

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.		accident	accidental	accidentally
2.		profession	professional	professionally
3.	secrete	secret	secretive	secretly
4.	separate	separation	separate	separately
5.	fear	fear	fearful fearless	fearfully fearlessly
6.	lose	loss	lost	
7.	terrify	terror terrorist	terrified terrifying	terrifyingly

1. During lunch, the waiter \_\_\_\_\_ dropped a glass of water on a customer. Even though it was an \_\_\_\_\_, he lost his job.
2. They did a \_\_\_\_\_ job on my house. No one could have done it better.
3. She took off her shoes so that she could enter the building \_\_\_\_\_. She wanted her arrival to be a \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I don't want to ride \_\_\_\_\_. Let's ride together.
5. Superman is \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The Student Union has a \_\_\_\_\_ and Found office. If you are lucky, you might find something there that you left in the cafeteria by mistake.
7. Two \_\_\_\_\_ hijacked an airplane and made the pilot fly to Paris. The passengers were \_\_\_\_\_. It was a \_\_\_\_\_ experience for them.



## **h** Articles

Put articles in the blanks if they are necessary.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ people who have to fly all \_\_\_\_\_ time for \_\_\_\_\_ business often find it boring.
2. However, some people feel only \_\_\_\_\_ terror when they get on \_\_\_\_\_ airplane.
3. Being afraid of \_\_\_\_\_ poisonous spiders is logical.
4. Three common \_\_\_\_\_ phobias are fear of \_\_\_\_\_ heights, fear of being enclosed in \_\_\_\_\_ small area, and fear of being in \_\_\_\_\_ large open area.
5. A plane crash is always in \_\_\_\_\_ news, but we never hear about \_\_\_\_\_ millions of \_\_\_\_\_ flights every year that are safe.
6. People who have a fear of heights avoid \_\_\_\_\_ high places, and if they are in \_\_\_\_\_ high-rise building, they don't look out \_\_\_\_\_ windows.
7. They might also be afraid of being in \_\_\_\_\_ enclosed place like \_\_\_\_\_ elevator or \_\_\_\_\_ tunnel on \_\_\_\_\_ highway.
8. When they get on \_\_\_\_\_ airplane, they can't get out until \_\_\_\_\_ end of \_\_\_\_\_ flight, and \_\_\_\_\_ flight might last several hours.

## **i** Connecting Words

Use **and**, **but**, or **even though** to connect a sentence in the second column with a sentence in the first column. Use a comma before **and** or **but**. Write the sentences on a separate piece of paper.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Businesspeople are bored with flying.        | a. They didn't have good equipment.                  |
| 2. A roadrunner fits well into its environment. | b. It looks funny.                                   |
| 3. People started exploring the ocean floor.    | c. Amundsen had arrived there first.                 |
| 4. The boat was caught in a bad storm.          | d. People who don't fly very often find it exciting. |
| 5. Scott reached the South Pole.                | e. It sank.  |





## Summarizing

Write a sentence to summarize each of these paragraphs. Number 2 will have a long sentence. For numbers 1 and 3, write a sentence with only the most important idea.

1. Paragraph 3 (lines 17–23)
2. Paragraphs 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9 (lines 29–50)
3. Paragraph 10 (lines 51–55)



## Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

1. Do you have a phobia? Describe it. If you wanted to control it, what would you do?
2. Describe the most terrifying trip you have ever taken, on an airplane or any other kind of transportation.





# Languages and Language Diversity



## Before You Read

1. What languages do you speak?
2. How is your first language different from English?
3. How many languages do you think there are in the world?



## Context Clues

The words in **bold print** below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

1. All languages have rules for **forming** words and for ordering those words into sentences.
2. People invent new words for their language and **borrow** words from other languages.
3. Languages are now disappearing at a rapid **rate**.
4. Experts **estimate** that the world loses a language every two weeks.
5. In one study, researchers looked at **bilingual** adults. Some of the adults learned a second language when they were children, and some learned a second language as adults.

# 3 Languages and Language Diversity



A language is a **system** of sounds, gestures, or **characters** used to communicate ideas and feelings. There are roughly 6,000 languages in the world today. Some languages are used by millions of people. Others

5 have only a few speakers.

All languages have rules for **forming** words and for ordering those words into **meaningful** sentences. In written languages, meaning is expressed through a system of characters and rules for combining those

10 characters. In spoken languages, meaning is expressed through a system of sounds and rules for combining those sounds. Many hearing-impaired people use sign languages, in which gestures do the work of the sound system of spoken languages.



15 Word order is more important in English than it is in  
some other languages such as Russian. The sound  
system is very important in Chinese and in many  
languages spoken in West Africa.

Languages are always changing, but they change  
20 very slowly. People invent new words for their  
language, **borrow** words from other languages, and  
change the meanings of words as needed. For example,  
the English word *byte* was invented by computer  
**specialists** in 1959. The English word *tomato* was  
25 borrowed from Nahuatl, an American Indian language  
spoken in Mexico. The English word *meat* once **referred**  
**to** food in general.

There are several major language families in the  
world. The languages in each family are related, and  
30 scientists think that they came from the same parent  
family. Language families come in different sizes. The  
Austronesian family contains at least 500 languages,  
including Pilipino, Malay, and Maori. The Basque  
language, spoken in northern Spain, is the only member  
35 of its language family.

The Indo-European language family contains fifty-  
five languages, including English. German, Spanish,  
Russian, and Hindi are also Indo-European languages.  
Another language family is Sino-Tibetan, which  
40 includes Chinese, Burmese, and Tibetan. The  
Afro-Asiatic family includes Arabic, Hebrew, and  
Amharic. There are about 150 American Indian  
languages spoken today. These languages have many  
differences among them and have been **divided** into **separated**  
45 more than fifty language families.

Today, 50% of the world's population speaks one of  
the top fifteen languages. The world's most common  
language is Mandarin Chinese, which has more than  
1 billion speakers. English is the international language  
50 for science and business. In fact, English has more  
second-language speakers than first-language speakers.

People learn languages by listening, reading, and  
using the language. Most children learn their first  
language easily—and sometimes other languages as

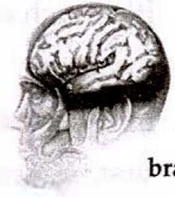




55 well. Adults often must work harder at learning a second language.

Recent research indicates that a child's **brain** actually learns a new language differently than an adult's brain does. In one study, scientists used a special  
60 machine to look at the brains of **bilingual** adults. Some of the adults learned a second language when they were children, and some learned a second language as adults. The study showed that children use the same part of their brain to learn both their first language and a  
65 second language. Adults, on the other hand, used a different area of their brain to process the second language.

Languages have come and gone in the **past**, but they are now disappearing at a rapid **rate**. Experts **estimate**  
70 that, on average, the world loses a language every two weeks. Some **linguists** believe that half of the world's languages could disappear in the next 100 years if we don't do anything. That would be roughly 3,000 languages lost forever. Should we let that happen?



brain

able to speak two languages

judge; calculate

people who study languages

## Vocabulary

systems  
borrow  
past

characters  
specializes  
rate

form  
refer to  
estimate

meaningful  
divided  
linguists

1. There are many different writing \_\_\_\_\_. The English language uses the Roman alphabet.
2. A dermatologist is a doctor who \_\_\_\_\_ in problems of the skin.
3. The United States is \_\_\_\_\_ into fifty states.
4. In the \_\_\_\_\_ fifty years, the population of the world has increased rapidly.
5. Can I \_\_\_\_\_ your pen for just a minute?





6. It's much easier to \_\_\_\_\_ wet snow into balls than to use dry snow.
7. In some countries, students \_\_\_\_\_ their professors by their first names.
8. Noam Chomsky, a professor at MIT, is one of the most famous \_\_\_\_\_ in the world.
9. A team of workers can build a car at a faster \_\_\_\_\_ than people working alone.
10. The word *diversity* has nine \_\_\_\_\_.



### Vocabulary

rate	estimate	meaningful	bilingual
brain	specialist	reference	divide
past	system	characters	linguistics

1. The best way to become \_\_\_\_\_ is to live in a foreign country.
2. His friends began to worry about him when he said that there was no longer anything \_\_\_\_\_ in his life.
3. If you want to study how people learn languages, you should take a \_\_\_\_\_ course.
4. Motorcyclists wear helmets to prevent \_\_\_\_\_ injury in an accident.
5. I don't know the exact population of my city, but I \_\_\_\_\_ that there are about 2 million people.
6. My dentist said that I need to go to a \_\_\_\_\_ to get my tooth fixed.
7. During the president's speech, she made \_\_\_\_\_ to an important new medical study.
8. The computer \_\_\_\_\_ for the whole office was down for two days.
9. When you exercise, your heart \_\_\_\_\_ goes up.
10. We had such a large class that the instructor had to \_\_\_\_\_ it up into three groups.





## Vocabulary Review: Antonyms

Match the words that mean the opposite.

- |                          |              |
|--------------------------|--------------|
| _____ 1. harmless        | a. negative  |
| _____ 2. instructor      | b. full      |
| _____ 3. once in a while | c. certainly |
| _____ 4. lift            | d. often     |
| _____ 5. maybe           | e. student   |
| _____ 6. terrify         | f. request   |
| _____ 7. empty           | g. calm      |
| _____ 8. positive        | h. land      |
| _____ 9. demand          | i. fear      |
| _____ 10. take off       | j. hazardous |
|                          | k. drop      |



## True/False/Not Enough Information

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. We don't know the exact number of languages used today.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Word order is the same in all languages.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. There is more than one kind of sign language.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Many hearing-impaired people use a sign language.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Many food words in English come from other languages.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. A language family can be small or large.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. There is nothing we can do to prevent the loss of half the world's languages.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. More people speak Chinese than any other language.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Fifty percent of the world's population speaks Chinese.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Adults and children use different parts of their brain to learn a second language.





## Comprehension Questions

1. What is the definition of a language?
2. What is a sign language?
3. In English, the basic order of words in a sentence is subject, verb, object. What is the basic order of words in your first language?
4. What is an example of a borrowed word?
5. What is an example of an invented word?
6. What is one difference between the Austronesian language family and the Indo-European language family?
7. Why is it useful to group languages into families?
8. Should we try to keep languages alive? Why or why not?
9. Why is it more difficult for adults than children to learn a second language?



## Paraphrasing

*Use your own words to say the ideas found in these sentences from the text. It is not necessary to use the same number of sentences. You may use more.*

1. There are about 150 American Indian languages spoken today. These languages have many differences among them and have been divided into more than fifty language families.
2. Most children learn their first language easily—and sometimes other languages as well. Adults often must work harder at learning a second language.



## Main Idea

1. Write a sentence for the main idea for paragraph 4 (lines 19–27).
2. Write a sentence for the main idea for paragraph 7 (lines 46–51).



## h Scanning

1. Half of the world's population speaks one of \_\_\_\_\_ languages.
2. We might lose half of the world's languages in the next \_\_\_\_\_ years.
3. The word *byte* entered the English language in the year \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Maori is a language in the \_\_\_\_\_ language family.

## Word Forms: Active and Passive

In an active sentence, the subject performs (does) the action:

**Computer specialists** invented the word *byte*.

In a passive sentence, the subject receives the action. The passive is formed with the verb **to be** and the past participle. Sometimes the person (the agent) who performed the action is included in the sentence after the word **by**. The agent is not included if it is unknown or unimportant. Sometimes everyone knows who the agent is, so naming it is not necessary.

The **word** *byte* was invented by computer specialists.

About 150 American Indian **languages** are still spoken today. (Everyone knows they are spoken by people.)

American Indian **languages** have been divided into more than fifty language families. (The people who divided the languages into families are not important in this sentence.)





Choose a word form from the chart for each blank. Use the passive form where needed.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	instruct	instruction	instructive instructor	
2.		(dis)honesty	(dis)honest	(dis)honestly
3.	imagine	imagination	(un)imaginative	(un)imaginatively
4.	invent	invention	inventive inventor	inventively
5.	interview	interview interviewer		
6.	characterize	character	(un)characteristic	(un)characteristically
7.		psychology	psychological psychologist	psychologically
8.	beg	beggar		
9.	depend (on)	dependability	(un)dependable	dependably

- The lecture on safe driving was very \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is an important characteristic for someone working in a bank.
- That mystery program was very \_\_\_\_\_. I didn't know how it was going to end until the last minute.
- The telephone \_\_\_\_\_ by Alexander Graham Bell.
- The Minister of Health didn't like some of the questions that the \_\_\_\_\_ asked him. He \_\_\_\_\_ by a foreign journalist.
- Marge started a fight with her sister. This was very \_\_\_\_\_ of Marge; she is usually nice to her sister.
- Barbara is going to study \_\_\_\_\_. Then she will work with people who have \_\_\_\_\_ problems.
- Dan \_\_\_\_\_ his friend to lend him his car.
- Mr. Thompson is a \_\_\_\_\_ person. You know that he will do what he says. You can \_\_\_\_\_ him.



## **j** Noun Substitutes

What does each noun substitute stand for?

1. page 134 line 15 **it** \_\_\_\_\_
2. page 134 line 19 **they** \_\_\_\_\_
3. page 134 line 30 **they** \_\_\_\_\_
4. page 135 line 61 **they** \_\_\_\_\_
5. page 135 line 68 **they** \_\_\_\_\_

## **k** Articles

Put articles in the blanks if they are necessary.

1. Some languages are used by millions of \_\_\_\_\_ people.
2. Many hearing-impaired people use sign languages, in which \_\_\_\_\_ gestures do the work of \_\_\_\_\_ sound system of \_\_\_\_\_ spoken languages.
3. Word order is more important in \_\_\_\_\_ English than it is in some other languages such as \_\_\_\_\_ Russian.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ English word *byte* was invented by \_\_\_\_\_ computer specialists in 1959.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ English word *meat* once referred to \_\_\_\_\_ food in general.
6. Experts estimate that, on average, the world loses \_\_\_\_\_ language every two weeks.
7. Today, 50% of \_\_\_\_\_ world's population speaks one of \_\_\_\_\_ top fifteen languages.
8. Recent research indicates that \_\_\_\_\_ child's brain learns \_\_\_\_\_ new language differently than \_\_\_\_\_ adult's brain does.



## Two-Word Verbs

pick (someone) up = go somewhere (for example, with your car) to get someone

stand for = be a symbol for (as in *U.S.* stands for *United States*)

see (someone) off = go with someone to the place from which he or she is going to leave (for example, the airport)

clean up = make clean and orderly (as in clean the house after a party or after some children had a lot of toys out)

help out = help someone to do something

1. *U.N.* \_\_\_\_\_ *United Nations*.
2. Tom had a big party. Afterwards, he had to \_\_\_\_\_ the house. Three of his friends stayed to \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Ali studied at New York University for five years. When he left, twenty people went to the airport to \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Let's go to the party together. I'll \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ at 9:00.

## m Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

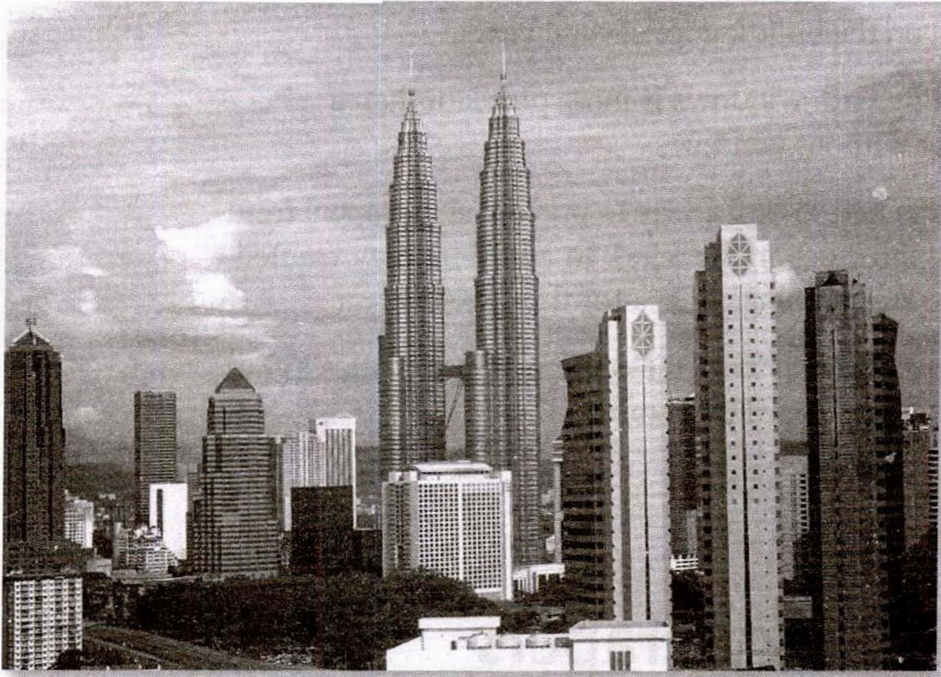
1. Compare your first language to the English language. How are they similar? How are they different?
2. What is easy about learning a second language? What is difficult?



# Skyscrapers

lesson

# 4



## Before You Read

1. What is the tallest building in your country? How old is it?
2. Why couldn't people build very tall buildings 100 years ago?
3. Do you think we should continue building tall buildings?  
Why or why not?





## Context Clues

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

1. One of the tallest buildings in the late nineteenth century was the fourteen-story Pulitzer Building.
2. Cesar Pelli was the **architect** of the Petronas Towers. He worked on the building for several years.
3. A building with windows is more **pleasant** than a building without windows.
4. Architects had to find a way to prevent skyscrapers from moving too much in the wind. **In addition**, they wanted to make the buildings as beautiful as possible.
5. During World War Two, the **centers** of many cities in Europe were destroyed by bombs.

## 4 Skyscrapers



In 1998, the Petronas Towers in Malaysia became the tallest building in the world, **stealing** the number one spot from the Sears Tower in Chicago. Four years later, in 2003, the Taipei 101 building in Taiwan stole the **title** from the Petronas Towers. It seems that no **skyscraper** can hold the title of “the world’s tallest building” for very long. But how high can a skyscraper go? Some experts believe that a mile-high building (5,280 feet, or 1,609 meters) is possible with the technology we now have.

For centuries, the tallest buildings were made of stone. The base, or lower walls, of a tall building had to be very thick in order to support the upper walls. The taller the building was, the thicker the lower walls had to be. One of the tallest buildings in the late nineteenth



century was the fourteen-**story** Pulitzer Building in **floor**  
New York. To support the upper walls of the building,  
the stone walls at the base were nine feet (three  
meters) thick!

20 It took two important technological **advancements**  
to make real skyscrapers possible. The first  
advancement was the mass production of iron and steel.  
The second was the production of lightweight metal  
**beams**. In the 1880s, **architects** started using these **people who design**  
25 beams to support the walls of buildings. These **buildings**  
buildings didn't need thick walls at the base, so they  
could be much taller.

There were other **advantages** to building with metal  
beams. The building walls were thinner, and they could  
30 have more windows, which made the rooms much  
more **pleasant**. With thin lower walls, there was more **nice**  
room for stores and offices on the ground floor. It was  
also faster to build with iron and steel than with stone.

However, there was still one problem. How would  
35 people get to the top floor of a tall building? The  
solution, of course, was the elevator. Elisha Otis  
invented the safety elevator and first showed it to the  
**public** in 1853. By the 1880s, there were elevators run by  
electricity, which were fast and light enough to use in  
40 skyscrapers. They were developed at just the right time.

There were other problems that architects and  
engineers had to solve. They had to figure out a way to  
get water to all the floors. They had to prevent the  
buildings from moving too much in the wind.  
45 **In addition**, they wanted to make the buildings as **and**  
beautiful as possible.

At the same time that architects were **designing** the  
first high-rise buildings, thousands of **immigrants** were  
entering the United States from Europe. These people  
50 needed housing, and tall buildings could provide  
plenty of it in the cities. Before long, skyscrapers were  
rising in cities across the United States.

Over the years, many problems connected to  
high-rise buildings were solved, and buildings got taller  
55 and taller. In 1909, a fifty-story building was built in



New York, and in 1913, one with sixty floors. In 1931, the Empire State Building in New York was finished; it was 102 stories high.

60 Throughout the twentieth century, other countries were building skyscrapers too. In Europe, the **centers** of many cities had been destroyed by **bombs** during World War Two. City planners rebuilt many of the buildings **exactly** as they had been, but they also included high-rises in their plans. Most European cities today are a  
65 mixture of old and modern buildings.

Tokyo did not have tall buildings for a long time because of **earthquakes**. Then engineers figured out how to keep a high-rise standing during an earthquake.

sudden, violent movements of the earth

70 Today, there are many tall buildings in Tokyo. In fact, there are tall buildings in cities throughout the world. As the population of a city increases, the number of high-rises increases because they take less **space**.

We have the technology for skyscrapers, but do we really need them or want them? With the invention of  
75 computers, a company doesn't need to have all its offices in one huge building. People can communicate by computer from offices spread out all over the city or even from their homes. And do we want 200-story buildings? Do people want to work and live that far above the  
80 ground? The architects and engineers who are planning these new skyscrapers have to think about these questions, or they may build buildings that no one will use.



## Vocabulary

skyscraper

advantages

title

advancement

immigrants

designs

stories

beams

stole

pleasant

in addition

architect

1. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ his car during the night. When he got up, it was gone.
2. There are many \_\_\_\_\_ to learning a second language.



3. A high-rise building is also called a \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The Nile River in Africa holds the \_\_\_\_\_ of longest river in the world.
5. Thousands of \_\_\_\_\_ arrive in Australia from Asia and Europe every year.
6. What was the most important scientific \_\_\_\_\_ in the twentieth century?
7. In some skyscrapers, the walls are made of steel \_\_\_\_\_ and glass.
8. An architect \_\_\_\_\_ buildings.
9. The Taipei 101 building has 101 \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Metal beams are used to build bridges \_\_\_\_\_ to skyscrapers.

## **b** Vocabulary

pleasant	immigrant	bomb	space
in addition	architect	story	earthquake
advantage	center	exact	public

1. One \_\_\_\_\_ of steel is that it is lighter than stone.
2. We've had \_\_\_\_\_ weather lately. It has been warm and sunny.
3. We tried to get twenty chairs into the room, but there wasn't enough \_\_\_\_\_.
4. An \_\_\_\_\_ in Turkey destroyed several villages.
5. The sun is at the \_\_\_\_\_ of our solar system.
6. A famous \_\_\_\_\_ designed the whole city of Brasilia.
7. I don't know the \_\_\_\_\_ height of the Sears Tower, but I think it's more than 400 meters tall.
8. Another word for a floor of a building is \_\_\_\_\_.
9. The lecture on modern architecture tonight is open to the \_\_\_\_\_. Anyone can go.
10. There was an explosion caused by a \_\_\_\_\_.





## Vocabulary Review: Definitions

Match the words with the definitions.

- |                     |                               |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| _____ 1. estimate   | a. better                     |
| _____ 2. interior   | b. half of the Earth          |
| _____ 3. border     | c. get away from              |
| _____ 4. delay      | d. guess; predict             |
| _____ 5. blind      | e. not dangerous              |
| _____ 6. harmless   | f. to the shore               |
| _____ 7. escape     | g. line between two countries |
| _____ 8. hemisphere | h. not able to see            |
| _____ 9. ashore     | i. remote                     |
| _____ 10. blizzard  | j. inside                     |
|                     | k. accident                   |
|                     | l. bad winter storm           |
|                     | m. cause to be late           |

## Multiple Choice

- The first skyscraper was built in \_\_\_\_\_.
  - the late nineteenth century
  - 1853
  - Tokyo
- It's impossible to build a skyscraper in stone because \_\_\_\_\_.
  - the building walls would be too thin
  - the lower walls would be too thick
  - people couldn't get to the top of the building
- Many European cities \_\_\_\_\_.
  - were destroyed by earthquakes
  - have only new buildings
  - have both old and new buildings
- A building with steel beams does not need \_\_\_\_\_.
  - technology
  - thick walls
  - stores and offices on the first floor



5. The first building with sixty floors was built only \_\_\_\_\_ years after a fifty-story building.
  - a. 1913
  - b. four
  - c. eighteen
6. As population increases, \_\_\_\_\_ increases.
  - a. immigration
  - b. the number of skyscrapers
  - c. the number of old buildings
7. There weren't any skyscrapers in Tokyo for a long time because of \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. earthquakes
  - b. the population
  - c. immigration



### Comprehension Questions

1. What technological advancements made skyscrapers possible?
2. Why don't buildings with steel beams need thick lower walls?
3. Name an advantage of buildings with thin lower walls.
4. Why does the text say that elevators were invented at just the right time?
5. What effect did the arrival of thousands of immigrants in the United States have on skyscrapers?
6. What is the tallest building in the world today?
7. What is the advantage of high-rise buildings over lower buildings?
8. Why can Japan have skyscrapers today when it couldn't before?
9. Do you think people would use 200-story buildings? What is your reason?



### Main Idea

1. Which sentence gives the main idea in paragraph 3 (lines 20–27)?
2. Which sentence gives the main idea in paragraph 6 (lines 41–46)?
3. Write a sentence that gives the main idea of paragraph 7 (lines 47–52).
4. Write a sentence that gives the main idea of the last paragraph.





## Word Forms

These are some common verb prefixes and suffixes:

**en-:** encircle, enclose

**-en:** darken, shorten

**-ize:** industrialize, publicize

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	compare	comparison	comparative	comparatively
2.	please	pleasure	(un)pleasant	(un)pleasantly
3.	add	addition	additional	additionally
4.	advance	advancement	advanced	
5.		(dis)advantage	(dis)advantageous	(dis)advantageously
6.	prevent	prevention	preventive	
7.	immigrate	immigration immigrant	immigration immigrant	
8.	popularize	popularity	popular	popularly
9.	enclose	enclosure	enclosed	
10.	strengthen	strength	strong	strongly

- Spanish spelling is \_\_\_\_\_ easy to learn. By \_\_\_\_\_, English spelling is difficult.
- It was a \_\_\_\_\_ to meet you.
- People who are afraid to fly don't like being closed in. \_\_\_\_\_, they sometimes fear heights and don't understand the technology of flying.
- What can you do to \_\_\_\_\_ in your profession?
- It is \_\_\_\_\_ to learn English. Are there any \_\_\_\_\_ to learning it?



6. Providing \_\_\_\_\_ medicine is better than helping people after they are sick.
7. The \_\_\_\_\_ office is open from 9:00 to 5:00.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ is very important to teenagers.
9. The farmer put his sheep in an \_\_\_\_\_ for the night.
10. I agree with you \_\_\_\_\_.

## **h** Two-Word Verbs: Review

*Put the right word in each blank.*

1. There was a long line waiting to check \_\_\_\_\_ at the airport.
2. A large truck broke \_\_\_\_\_ on the highway.
3. Alice goes to the gym every weekend to work \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Do you have enough money to live \_\_\_\_\_?
5. Could you help me \_\_\_\_\_ this weekend?
6. Fixing my car turned \_\_\_\_\_ an all-day job.
7. Mr. Brown is working too hard and has to slow \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Jean had to drop \_\_\_\_\_ of school and get a job.
9. Children don't like to put \_\_\_\_\_ their toys when they finish playing.
10. Bob was an hour late because he ran \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ gas.

## **i** Articles

*Put articles in the blanks if they are needed.*

1. In 1998, \_\_\_\_\_ Petronas Towers in \_\_\_\_\_ Malaysia became \_\_\_\_\_ tallest building in \_\_\_\_\_ world.
2. For centuries, \_\_\_\_\_ tallest buildings were made of \_\_\_\_\_ stone.
3. In \_\_\_\_\_ 1880s, \_\_\_\_\_ architects started using these beams to support \_\_\_\_\_ walls of buildings.
4. Elisha Otis invented \_\_\_\_\_ safety elevator and first showed it to \_\_\_\_\_ public in \_\_\_\_\_ 1853.
5. In 1931, \_\_\_\_\_ Empire State Building in \_\_\_\_\_ New York was finished; it was 102 stories high.
6. With \_\_\_\_\_ invention of \_\_\_\_\_ computers, \_\_\_\_\_ company doesn't need to have all its offices in one huge building.





## Summarizing

*Write a sentence to summarize each of these paragraphs.*

1. Paragraph 1 (lines 1–10)
2. Paragraph 2 (lines 11–19)
3. Paragraph 5 (lines 34–40)

## Guided Writing

*Write one of these two short compositions.*

1. Do you think we should continue to build higher and higher buildings? Why or why not?
2. Describe a skyscraper you have seen. Be very specific and give complete details.



# Left-Handedness

lesson

# 5



## Before You Read

1. How many people in the picture are writing with their left hand?
2. Are you left-handed, or is anyone else in your family left-handed?
3. What advantages and disadvantages are there to being left-handed?



## Context Clues

The words in **bold** print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

1. Do you **prefer** to write with your left hand or your right hand?
2. In the past, left-handed people were often **forced** to use their right hand.
3. One part of the brain controls how a person uses the five **senses**—sight, hearing, smell, taste, and touch.
4. Some left-handed children see letters and words **backwards**. They read *d* for *b* and *was* for *saw*.
5. In the 1930s, some teachers started **permitting** schoolchildren to write with their left hand.

# 5 Left-Handedness



Do you **prefer** to write with your left hand? If you do, you are one of the millions of “lefties” in the world. There would be even more left-handed people in the world if many people weren’t **forced** to use their right hand.

like better

To understand left-handedness, it is **necessary** to look at the brain. The brain is divided into two hemispheres. In most right-handers, the left hemisphere is the center of language and logical thinking. This is where they do their math problems and **memorize** vocabulary. The right hemisphere controls how they understand **broad**, general ideas and how they **respond** to the five **senses**—sight, hearing, smell, taste, and touch.

covering many topics

The left hemisphere of the brain controls the right side of the body, and the right hemisphere controls the left side. Both sides of the body receive the same information from the brain because both hemispheres



are connected. However, in right-handed people, the left hemisphere is stronger. In left-handed people, it is the right hemisphere that is stronger.

Different handedness causes differences in people. Although the left hemisphere controls language in most right-handers, 40% of left-handers have the language center in the right hemisphere. The other 60% use the left side of the brain or both sides for language.

Lefties prefer not only the left hand but also the left foot. They prefer using the left foot to kick a ball because their whole body is "left-handed."

There has been an increasing amount of research on handedness. For example, one psychologist says that left-handers are more **likely** to have good imaginations. They are also more likely than right-handers to enjoy swimming underwater. That is because left-handers can **adjust** more easily to seeing underwater.

change

Left-handedness can cause problems for people. Some left-handed children see letters and words **backwards**. They read *d* for *b* and *was* for *saw*. Another problem is **stuttering**. Some left-handed children start to stutter when they are forced to write with their right hand. Queen Elizabeth II's father, King George VI, had to change from left- to right-handed writing when he was a child, and he stuttered all his life.

repeating words or parts of words

**Anthropologists** think that the earliest people were about 50% right-handed and 50% left-handed because ancient **tools** from before 8000 B.C. could be used with either hand. But by 3500 B.C., the tools, which were better designed, were for use with only one hand. More than half of them were for right-handed people.

people who study different cultures

The first writing system, invented by the Phoenicians (3000–2000 B.C.) in the Middle East, went from right to left. The Greeks began to write from left to right around the fifth century B.C. because they increasingly believed that right was "good" and left was "bad." As time passed, more and more customs connected left with "bad." This belief is still common in many countries today, and left-handed people **suffer** because of it.

experience difficulties or pain





As the centuries passed and **education** spread to more levels of society, more and more people became  
60 literate. As more children learned to write, more of them were forced to write with their right hand. In the 1930s, some teachers finally started **permitting** schoolchildren to write with their left hand. In some countries, however, left-handed children are still forced to write  
65 with their right hand.

Many famous people were left-handed. Napoleon, Michelangelo, Beethoven, Isaac Newton, and Albert Einstein were all left-handed. Alexander the Great and Queen Victoria of England were left-handed too. Paul  
70 McCartney of the Beatles plays the guitar the **opposite** way from other guitarists because he is left-handed.

Are you left-handed even though you write with your right hand? Take this test to find out. Draw a circle first with one hand and then with the other. If you draw  
75 the circles **clockwise** (the direction the hands of a clock go in), you are probably left-handed. If you draw them **counterclockwise** (in the other direction), you are right-handed. The test does not always work, and some people draw one circle in one direction and the other  
80 circle in the other direction. But don't worry if you are left-handed. You are **in good company**.

with a lot of other good people

## **a** Vocabulary

necessary	broader	backwards	stutter
senses	responding	force	prefer
memorize	tool	adjust	likely

1. The main streets of a city are \_\_\_\_\_ than the side streets. Broadway is a common street name.
2. A left-handed person who is forced to write with the right hand may begin to \_\_\_\_\_.
3. A car can go forward and \_\_\_\_\_.



4. Did you \_\_\_\_\_ any poems when you were a child?
5. Do you \_\_\_\_\_ to have coffee or tea in the morning?
6. A blind person is lacking one of the \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Some students are shy about \_\_\_\_\_ to questions in class.
8. As you drive off the highway, you need to \_\_\_\_\_ your speed.
9. Many businesspeople agree that it's \_\_\_\_\_ to know English today.
10. There are no clouds in the sky today, so it's not \_\_\_\_\_ to rain.

## **b** Vocabulary

suffering	tools	force	anthropologist
broad	respond	permit	counterclockwise
education	opposite	clockwise	company

1. A mechanic cannot fix a car without \_\_\_\_\_.
2. If you want to get a good \_\_\_\_\_, where should you go to school?
3. The hands of a clock move in a \_\_\_\_\_ direction.
4. Parents should not \_\_\_\_\_ their children to swim in the pool without an adult there.
5. We had lots of \_\_\_\_\_ this weekend. My relatives and my wife's relatives all came over.
6. If you turn to the left, you are turning in a \_\_\_\_\_ direction.
7. The \_\_\_\_\_ of north is south.
8. A person who studies ancient cultures is called an \_\_\_\_\_.
9. He tried to \_\_\_\_\_ the door open, but it wouldn't move.
10. During a war, there is a tremendous amount of \_\_\_\_\_.



## Vocabulary Review

sticks out	borrow	mates	nests
once in a while	specialist	exactly	crash
fear	tunnel	loss	terrified

1. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ how tall you are?
2. In spring, animals search for \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Spiders and birds build \_\_\_\_\_.
4. A roadrunner's head \_\_\_\_\_ straight in front when it runs.
5. The Simplon \_\_\_\_\_ goes under the Alps between Italy and Switzerland.
6. Being afraid to fly is an illogical \_\_\_\_\_.
7. We heard a loud \_\_\_\_\_ and knew that there had been an accident.
8. You can \_\_\_\_\_ my books, but please don't forget to return them.
9. Would you be \_\_\_\_\_ to meet Frankenstein?
10. Most people fly only \_\_\_\_\_.

## d True/False/Not Enough Information

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Some Eskimos are left-handed.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Most right-handers do calculus with the left hemisphere of the brain.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. When people look at a beautiful building, most of them use the right hemisphere of the brain.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. The right hemisphere controls the right side of the body.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Most people in the world use the left hemisphere for language.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Left-handedness can cause children to see letters backwards.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. It is easier to write from left to right.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Left-handed people are more intelligent than right-handers.



## e Comprehension Questions

1. What does the right hemisphere of the brain control?
2. Which hemisphere is stronger in left-handed people?
3. Why do lefties prefer to kick with the left foot?
4. What problems do lefties have in using machines?
5. When do some left-handers start to stutter?
6. Why do anthropologists think that the earliest people were equally divided between left- and right-handers?
7. Why did the Greeks start writing from left to right?
8. What does "You are in good company" mean?
9. How can you tell if a 2-year-old child is left-handed?
10. Are you left-handed?

## f Main Idea

1. What sentence is the main idea for paragraph 4 (lines 21–25)?
2. What sentence is the main idea for paragraph 6 (lines 29–34)?
3. Write a sentence for the main idea in paragraph 9 (lines 49–57).
4. Write the main idea of the last paragraph.

## g Word Forms

	<b>Verb</b>	<b>Noun</b>	<b>Adjective</b>	<b>Adverb</b>
1.	communicate	communication(s)	(un)communicative	
2.	exist	existence	(non)existent	
3.	prefer	preference	(un)preferential	(un)preferentially
4.	divide	division	(in)divisible	
5.	force	force	forceful	forcefully
6.			(un)common	(un)commonly
7.	respond	response	(un)responsive	
8.	permit	permission permit	(im)permissible	(im)permissibly
9.		reality	(un)real	really





Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

1. I tried to get the information from the president's secretary, but he was very \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Frank told everyone that he worked for a large company, but the company is \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Professors should not give \_\_\_\_\_ treatment to the students they like.
4. Ten is not evenly \_\_\_\_\_ by 3.
5. John was \_\_\_\_\_ to leave the university because his grades were so bad.
6. It is \_\_\_\_\_ believed that girls learn languages faster than boys.
7. The injured person \_\_\_\_\_ to the doctor's treatment. She is well now.
8. You cannot build a house in this city without a building \_\_\_\_\_.
9. It seemed \_\_\_\_\_ to Abdullah that he had finally finished his doctorate degree and was going home.



### Missing Words

Fill in the missing words.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ understand left-handedness, it is necessary \_\_\_\_\_ look \_\_\_\_\_ the brain.
2. The brain \_\_\_\_\_ divided \_\_\_\_\_ two hemispheres.



3. Both sides of \_\_\_\_\_ body receive the same information \_\_\_\_\_ the brain because both hemispheres \_\_\_\_\_ connected.
4. There has been \_\_\_\_\_ increasing amount \_\_\_\_\_ research \_\_\_\_\_ handedness.
5. But \_\_\_\_\_ 3500 B.C., the tools, which \_\_\_\_\_ better designed, were for use \_\_\_\_\_ only one hand.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ the centuries passed and education spread \_\_\_\_\_ more levels \_\_\_\_\_ society, more and \_\_\_\_\_ people became \_\_\_\_\_.



### Connecting Words

*Put after, before, when, since, or until in the blanks.*

1. I'll give you the book \_\_\_\_\_ I see you tomorrow.
2. People who are afraid of flying can control their fear \_\_\_\_\_ they take a class.
3. The Garbage Project has been in existence \_\_\_\_\_ 1973.
4. Toronto knew that it had done a good job recycling \_\_\_\_\_ the Garbage Project proved that the amount of its garbage had become smaller.
5. Sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ the roadrunner gets a piece of meat, it takes it back to its nest.
6. There were no skyscrapers \_\_\_\_\_ 1884.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Burke started across Australia, he organized the expedition.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ the 1930s, teachers forced all children to write with their right hand.





## Finding the Reason

Write the reason for each statement.

Statement	Reason
1. Many left-handers have to use their right hand.	
2. For some people, the center of language is in the right hemisphere.	
3. Both sides of the body receive the same information.	
4. Lefties prefer kicking with the left foot.	
5. King George VI stuttered.	
6. Anthropologists think that more than 50% of people were right-handed by 3500 B.C.	
7. Paul McCartney plays the guitar differently.	



## Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

1. Write a short history of left-handedness. Start with the earliest people and continue until today.
2. Your 3-year-old child is left-handed. Your friend thinks that you should teach the child to use the right hand instead. What are you going to do and why?



# Video Highlights

## **a** Before You Watch

1. How much do you remember about skyscrapers? Work with a partner to recall the following information from Lesson 4.
  - a. The building material that made tall buildings possible:  
\_\_\_\_\_
  - b. Two problems that architects and engineers had to solve:  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. Read these comments from the video "Green Skyscraper":

"Lights, tourists, traffic. Times Square is not where you would expect to find an environmental experiment in progress."

"But, slowly rising is a forty-eight-story building designed to save energy and other natural resources."

Then discuss the questions below with your partner.

  - a. What do you know about New York? List three facts.
  - b. Why do you think this new building is called a "green skyscraper"?

## **b** As You Watch

*Listen for information that will help you complete this list:*

### **Ways the Green Skyscraper Will Save Energy**

1. It will use solar panels to generate clean \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Extra insulation will be used to keep heat (or cool air) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Oversized \_\_\_\_\_ will let in light, but not too much heat.







## After You Watch

1. Check the facts. Is the underlined information in the following sentences correct? If not, change the sentence to make it correct. Write your correction above the mistake. If the information is already correct, do not change the sentence.

*Example:* It's going to cut energy use by <sup>40%</sup>~~80%~~ over a conventional building.

- a. The builder, architects, and suppliers communicate via airmail and the Internet.
  - b. We believe we've eliminated about 40,000 sheets of paper.
  - c. The building was designed to cut down on the use of glass and other energy-intensive building materials.
  - d. Keeping buildings running takes up about one half of the energy used in America each year.
2. Why is the statement below important? Discuss it with a partner. Share your explanation with the class.

"The building is going to cut energy use by 40% over a conventional building . . . . That's significant, particularly in a building this big. That's a lot of carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) that won't be going into the atmosphere."



# Activity Page

## Familiar Phrases

A phrase is a group of words that has a special meaning. Use this key to figure out the familiar phrases.

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z
Z	Y	X	W	V	U	T	S	R	Q	P	O	N	M	L	K	J	I	H	G	F	E	D	C	B	A

Write the phrase on the top line, and then use it in a sentence of your own on the bottom line.

Example: R M T L L W X K N K Z M B

*in good company*

*If you like to swim, you are in good company with fish.*

1. G Z K B L F I U L L G

---

---

2. Z S R T S - I R H V Y F R O W R M T

---

---

3. L M X V R M Z D S R O V

---

---



# Dictionary Page

## Understanding Grammar Codes

1. You can use your dictionary to learn about regular verbs.

Ending	Form	Example
-ed	simple past	They designed the building to save energy.
-ed	past participle	The building was designed to save energy.
-ing	present participle	The architects are designing a new building.
-s	third person singular	He designs buildings for a living.

Your dictionary also gives you the forms of all irregular verbs. Look at this entry for the verb *swim*. Label each of its main forms.

**swim** /swɪm/ v. **swam** /swæm/, **swum** /swʌm/, **swimming**, **swims** 1 [I] to move through water by moving parts of the body (legs, arms, fins, tails): *He swam across the river and back again.*

2. Complete these sentences with the correct form of the verb in parentheses. Use your dictionary to check for the correct spelling.

*Example:* The audience (clap) clapped their hands and stamped their feet.

- The Taipei 101 building (steal) \_\_\_\_\_ the title of "tallest building in the world."
- I (lose) \_\_\_\_\_ my wallet somewhere.
- Many left-handers (excel) \_\_\_\_\_ in tennis, baseball, and swimming.

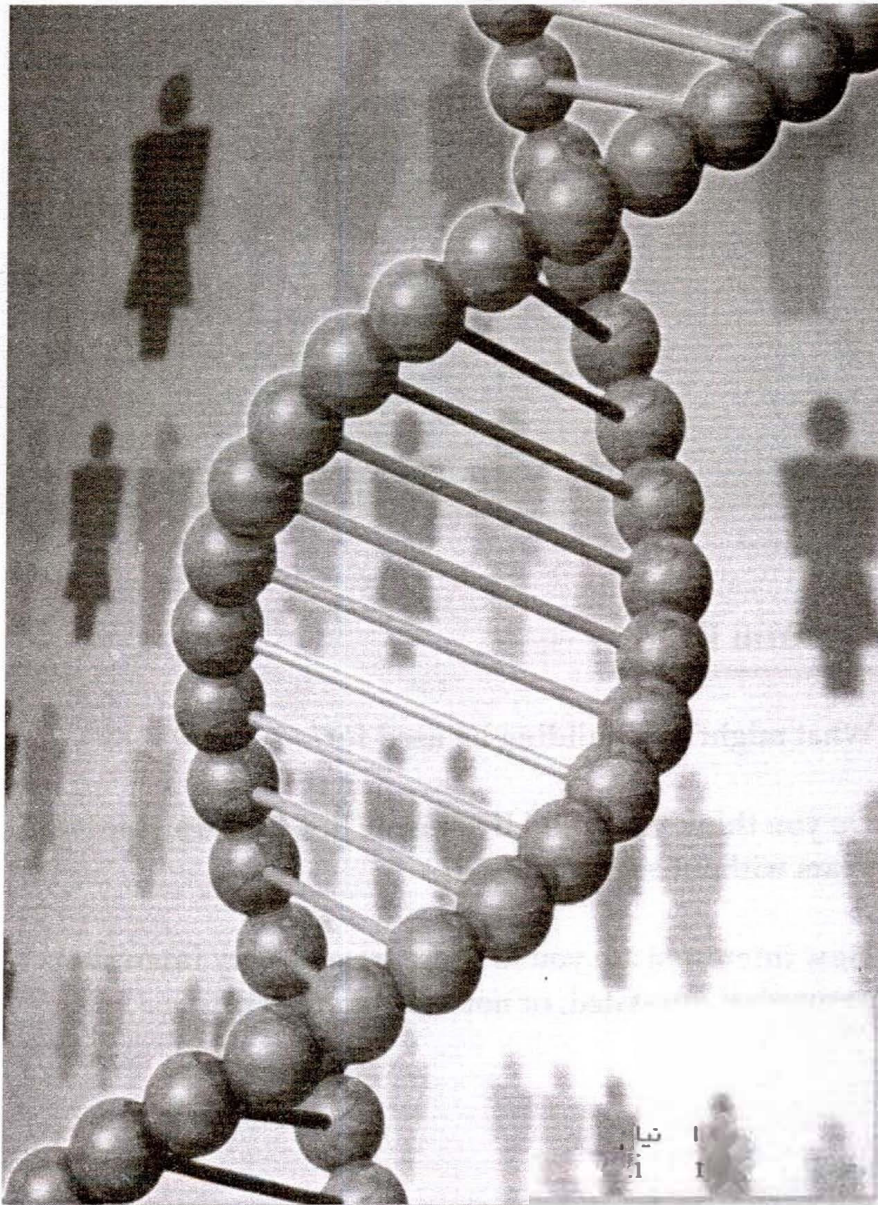




# Science

# unit 4

*Minds are like parachutes. They only function when they are open.*  
—Sir James Dewar





# Biospheres in Space



## Before You Read

1. What might this building be used for?
2. Do you think you could live inside this building for two years without ever leaving it?
3. How interested are you in space travel—very interested, somewhat interested, or not very interested?



## Context Clues

The words in **bold print** are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

1. Will it ever be possible for people to live on faraway **planets** such as Mars and Jupiter?
2. Scientists at the Environmental Research **Laboratory** are doing experiments on the Earth's environment.
3. A biosphere will need **bacteria** or something else to take care of the wastes.
4. **So far**, only a few experimental biospheres have been built on Earth.

# 1 Biospheres in Space



Will it ever be possible for people to live on faraway **planets** such as Mars? In the past, **colonies** in space were possible only in **science fiction** stories. Today, however, we are experimenting with ways to build real space colonies. Many scientists actually **consider** it possible that people will live far from the Earth sometime in the future.



The Environmental Research **Laboratory** at the University of Arizona is one place that designs biospheres (*bio* means *life*, and a *sphere* is a *circle*, like a ball) which could be used to live on other planets. Biospheres are complete, enclosed environments where people can be born, live their whole lives, and die without returning to the Earth. To be successful, a biosphere has to have a perfect **balance** among everything within it—the plants, the animals (including humans), and the chemical **elements**. Specialists and experts from many different fields are needed to work on these **complex projects**.

complicated



Building a greenhouse for growing plants in winter  
20 is the first step in **creating** a biosphere. A greenhouse  
is a closed environment except for the sun's heat  
entering through the glass or plastic. Of course, there is  
a water system from outside, and people bring in  
nutrients for the plants and take out the waste material.  
25 A biosphere in space will have to have its own system  
to provide water that can be used and reused. It will  
need **bacteria** or something else to take care of the  
wastes. Everything must be perfectly balanced, or else  
the whole system will break down.

30 The Earth itself is the best example of a real  
biosphere. Nothing important enters except sunlight,  
and nothing leaves as waste except some heat.  
Everything in the Earth's environment needs to be in  
balance. If we destroy that balance, the system will  
35 break down.

There are several reasons for building biospheres.  
One reason is to help out when there is an energy  
shortage. Dr. Gerard K. O'Neill, a famous **physicist**  
from Princeton University, has said that in the future we  
40 will have **satellites** in space to produce **solar** energy  
and send it to the Earth. It will be too expensive to  
continually send people and materials to the satellites,  
so biospheres will be necessary. He thinks that 10,000  
people could live in a space colony sometime in the  
45 future. There is another interesting reason to build  
biospheres. We can use them to do all kinds of research  
about our own environment and how it works. By  
studying biospheres, we can understand better what  
will happen as humans destroy tropical forests, as they  
50 create more **carbon dioxide** by burning fuel, and as they  
pollute the oceans and the air.

**So far**, only a few experimental biospheres have  
been built on Earth. One is in Oracle, Arizona, near the  
University of Arizona. In 1991, four men and four  
55 women tried to live inside the biosphere without  
getting anything from outside. During the experiment,  
things got out of balance. Oxygen and carbon dioxide  
levels fell, and the crew had to get help and supplies

making



satellite  
of the sun

until now





from outside. In space, people living in a biosphere  
60 would not be able to do this.

Learning how a biosphere works is one of the most  
important things we can do. The information we get  
from biospheres may **keep us from** destroying our own  
environment. This information will also help us to  
65 travel where once only science fiction could go.

## **a** Vocabulary

colony	planet	project	science fiction
solar	satellite	complex	balance
physicist	bacteria	consider	carbon dioxide

1. The Earth is a \_\_\_\_\_. It is part of the \_\_\_\_\_ system.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ can cause disease. They also destroy wastes.
3. Ants live together in a \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Julia likes to read \_\_\_\_\_.
5. It's difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ a book on your head while you are walking.
6. The government's biggest \_\_\_\_\_ is to build a dam to store water for agriculture.
7. Another word for *complicated* is \_\_\_\_\_.
8. We must \_\_\_\_\_ the advantages and the disadvantages before we start the project.





## **b** Vocabulary

create	satellite	bacteria	carbon dioxide
so far	keep	laboratory	elements
balance	project	physicist	consider

1. CO<sub>2</sub> stands for \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Gold (Au), oxygen (O), and uranium (U) are all \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Destroying rain forests can \_\_\_\_\_ problems for the whole world.
4. Scientists in a \_\_\_\_\_ often wear white coats.
5. \_\_\_\_\_, there are no buildings over 120 stories high.
6. A \_\_\_\_\_ teaches or does research in physics.
7. Before the large increase in population, there was a \_\_\_\_\_ between the needs of the people and what the land could produce.
8. Much international communication is now done by \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Designing a space colony would be a difficult \_\_\_\_\_.
10. They locked the door to \_\_\_\_\_ people from coming in.
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ you to be a good friend.

## **c** Vocabulary Review

diet	tools	clockwise	story
takes off	dispose of	harmful	phobia
straighten	position	permission	remained

1. You need to turn the door knob \_\_\_\_\_ in order to open the door.
2. You should turn off your cell phone before the plane \_\_\_\_\_.
3. It's not healthy to live on a \_\_\_\_\_ of junk food.
4. If they \_\_\_\_\_ the road, people will drive a lot faster.
5. Smoking is \_\_\_\_\_ to your health.
6. His office is on the twenty-sixth floor of a forty-\_\_\_\_\_ building.
7. What \_\_\_\_\_ do you need to build a house?



8. You need to get special \_\_\_\_\_ to go inside the laboratory.
9. How would people in a space colony \_\_\_\_\_ their garbage?
10. Only three people \_\_\_\_\_ in the theater to see the whole movie. Everyone else left early.

## **d** Multiple Choice

1. Fiction is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. true
  - b. imaginative
  - c. boring
2. Biospheres are complicated projects because \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. everything must be perfectly balanced
  - b. scientists don't know what materials to use to build them
  - c. people from different professions work on them
3. The experimental biosphere in Arizona \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. was very successful
  - b. had serious problems
  - c. stayed in perfect balance
4. Biospheres in space could support \_\_\_\_\_ people.
  - a. two or three
  - b. ten
  - c. 10,000
5. A greenhouse \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. is a partly enclosed environment
  - b. is a biosphere
  - c. supports plant life independently
6. \_\_\_\_\_ might take care of the wastes in a biosphere.
  - a. A water system
  - b. Balanced nutrients
  - c. Bacteria
7. Dr. O'Neill thinks that \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. satellites can produce solar energy
  - b. about ten people could take care of a satellite
  - c. we need a space colony to study the solar system



## Comprehension Questions

1. Why is it a complex project to create a biosphere?
2. How is a greenhouse different from a biosphere?
3. Explain why the Earth is a biosphere.
4. How does Dr. O'Neill think that we will solve the energy shortage?
5. Why can we learn about our environment from a biosphere?
6. What happened when people moved into the Arizona biosphere?
7. Would you like to live in a biosphere on Mars? Why or why not?

## Main Idea

1. What is the main idea of paragraph 4 (lines 30–35)?
2. What is the main idea of paragraph 5 (lines 36–51)?
3. Write a sentence that gives the main idea for paragraph 6 (lines 52–60).

## g Cause and Effect

*What is the cause of each of these effects?*

Cause	Effect
1.	People can live their whole lives in biospheres.
2.	The whole system might break down.
3.	The same water must be used and reused.
4.	We will need solar energy.
5.	A biosphere will be necessary to run solar energy production.
6.	We create more carbon dioxide.



## h

### Word Forms: Verbs and Nouns

Many English words are used as both a verb and a noun. Use ten of these examples in sentences, using some verbs and some nouns.

Verb	Noun
balance	balance
crash	crash
force	force
design	design
escape	escape
party	party
fear	fear
harm	harm
bother	bother
whistle	whistle
knock	knock

## i

### Noun Substitutes

What do these noun substitutes stand for?

1. page 170 line 26 **it** \_\_\_\_\_
2. page 170 line 41 **it** \_\_\_\_\_
3. page 170 line 46 **them** \_\_\_\_\_
4. page 170 line 47 **it** \_\_\_\_\_
5. page 170 line 53 **one** \_\_\_\_\_

## j

### Articles

Put articles in the blanks if they are necessary.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Environmental Research Laboratory at \_\_\_\_\_ University of Arizona is one place that designs \_\_\_\_\_ biospheres.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ greenhouse is \_\_\_\_\_ closed environment except for \_\_\_\_\_ sun's heat entering through the glass.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Earth itself is \_\_\_\_\_ best example of \_\_\_\_\_ real biosphere.





4. Everything in \_\_\_\_\_ Earth's environment needs to be in \_\_\_\_\_ balance.
5. So far, only \_\_\_\_\_ few experimental biospheres have been built on \_\_\_\_\_ Earth.
6. Oxygen levels fell, and \_\_\_\_\_ crew had to get \_\_\_\_\_ help and \_\_\_\_\_ supplies from outside.
7. Learning how \_\_\_\_\_ biosphere works is one of \_\_\_\_\_ most important things we can do.

## **k** Guided Writing

*Write one of these two short compositions.*

1. Should we build biospheres? Why or why not?
2. You are living in a biosphere on Mars. Describe your life.



# Earthquakes

lesson

# 2



## Before You Read

1. What happened in this picture?
2. Have you ever felt an earthquake?
3. What should you do if you feel an earthquake?



## Context Clues

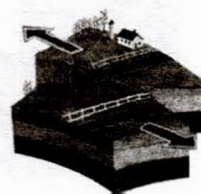
The words in **bold print** are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

1. A large movement causes a violent earthquake, but a small movement causes a **mild** one.
2. When the ocean waves hit land, they **flood** coastal areas.
3. During the earthquake, bridges fell and cars were **crushed**.
4. Estimates of deaths **ranged** from 250,000 to 695,000.
5. **Seismology** is the study of earthquakes.

## 2 Earthquakes



What causes earthquakes? The outer **layer** of the Earth is divided into huge pieces that are constantly moving. When two of the pieces move against each other or move in opposite directions, an earthquake happens. A large movement causes a violent earthquake, and a small movement causes a **mild** one. There are thousands of earthquakes every year, but most of them are very small.



layers

The place where an earthquake begins is called the **epicenter**. When an earthquake happens, **vibrations** move outward from the epicenter. These **rolling** vibrations are called **seismic** waves. Usually, an earthquake is only strong enough to cause damage near its epicenter.

shaking movements

When the epicenter of an earthquake is at the bottom of the ocean, it can create huge sea waves as tall as fifteen meters. These waves cross the ocean in several hours. Rushing toward land, they destroy small islands and ships in their path. When they hit land, they **flood** coastal areas far from the epicenter of the earthquake. In 1868, a wave reached 4.5 kilometers inland in Peru.

cover with water

After an earthquake happens, people can die from lack of food, water, and medical supplies. The amount



of destruction caused by an earthquake depends on where it happens, what time it happens, and how strong it is. It also depends on the types of buildings in the area, the soil conditions, and the size of the population. Of the thousands of earthquakes in the world each year, only about 1 in 500 causes damage.

In 1556, an earthquake in northern China killed 830,000 people—the most in history. At that time, there was no way to measure its strength. In 1935, scientists started using the Richter Scale to measure seismic waves. A seriously destructive earthquake measures 6.5 or higher on the Richter Scale.

How can scientists predict earthquakes?

Earthquakes are not just scattered anywhere on the surface of the Earth; they happen in areas where pieces of the Earth's surface meet. For example, earthquakes often occur on the west coasts of North and South America, around the Mediterranean Sea, and along the Pacific coast of Asia.

One way to predict earthquakes is to look for changes in the Earth's surface, like a sudden drop in the water level in the ground. Some people say that animals can predict earthquakes. Before earthquakes, people have seen chickens sitting in trees, fish jumping out of the water, snakes leaving their holes, and other animals acting strangely.

On February 4, 1975, scientists predicted an earthquake in northeastern China and told people in the earthquake zone to leave the cities. More than a million people moved into the surrounding countryside, into safe, open fields away from buildings. That afternoon, the ground rolled and shook beneath the people's feet. In seconds, 90% of the buildings in the city of Haicheng were destroyed. The decision to tell the people to leave the cities saved 10,000 lives.

However, more than a year later, on July 28, 1976, the scientists were not so lucky. East of Beijing, Chinese scientists were discussing a possible earthquake. During their meeting, the worst earthquake in modern times hit. Estimates of deaths ranged from 250,000 to 695,000.





The earthquake measured 7.9 on the Richter Scale.

In late 1984, strong earthquakes began shaking the  
65 Nevado del Ruiz **volcano** in Colombia. On November  
14, 1985, the volcano finally **erupted**. A nearby river  
became a sea of mud that buried four towns, and more  
than 2,100 people were killed. This combination of an  
earthquake and a volcanic eruption was not a **unique**  
70 event. In fact, it's not unusual for earthquakes and  
volcanic eruptions to happen at the same time.

Mexico City has frequent earthquakes. An  
earthquake there on September 19, 1985, measured 8.1  
on the Richter Scale and killed 7,000 people. Most  
75 **victims** died when buildings fell on them.

San Francisco, California, also has frequent  
earthquakes. However, newer buildings there are built  
to be safe in earthquakes. When an earthquake  
measuring 7.1 on the Richter Scale hit northern  
80 California on October 17, 1989, only 67 people were  
killed. The earthquake hit in the afternoon, when  
thousands of people were driving home from work.  
Freeways and bridges broke and fell. Buried under the  
layers of the Oakland Freeway, people were **crushed** in  
85 their flattened cars. Explosions sounded like **thunder**  
as older buildings seemed to **burst** apart along with  
the freeways. As electric power lines were broken by  
the falling bridges and buildings, the sky, covered with  
huge clouds of black dust, appeared to be filled with  
90 **lightning**. Water from broken pipes rushed into the  
streets and mixed with gas from broken gas lines,  
causing more explosions.

Emergency workers had to **cope** with medical  
problems. Everyone worked together to save survivors  
95 and comfort victims. The next day, the disaster sites  
looked terrible. Victims couldn't find their houses,  
their cars, or even their streets. Boats were destroyed,  
and **debris** covered the surface of the sea. There was no  
water, no electricity, no telephone service, only the  
100 smell of garbage **floating** in **melted** ice in refrigerators  
open to the sun. Losses and **property** damage from the  
earthquake amounted to millions of dollars.

one of a kind



volcano



lightning

trash



**Seismology** is the study of earthquakes, and a seismologist is a scientist who **observes** earthquakes.

105 Seismologists have given us valuable knowledge about earthquakes. Their equipment measures the smallest vibrations on the surface of the Earth. They are trying to find ways to use knowledge about earthquakes to save lives and to help solve the world's energy

110 shortage. The Earth's natural activity underground creates energy in the form of heat. **Geothermal** means *earth heat*.

If seismologists could predict earthquakes, we could save about 20,000 human lives each year.

115 Humans can control many things about nature, but they cannot control earthquakes.

## a Vocabulary

volcanoes	rolled	floods	unique
vibrate	thunder	erupted	crush
victim	lightning	bursts	melts
float	layer	geothermal	mild

1. When snow \_\_\_\_\_ in the mountains, it can cause \_\_\_\_\_ in the lowlands.
2. Earthquakes can happen before the eruption of \_\_\_\_\_.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ energy comes from heat under the Earth.
4. Mount St. Helens, a volcano in Washington State in the United States, \_\_\_\_\_ in 1980.
5. When Peter set his pencil down, it \_\_\_\_\_ off onto the floor.
6. A blowout happens when a tire \_\_\_\_\_ while a car is moving.
7. The weather has been \_\_\_\_\_ this week. Even though it is winter, it hasn't been very cold.
8. They built their house themselves, so it's truly \_\_\_\_\_.
9. There are both heat and activity below the outer \_\_\_\_\_ of the Earth.
10. A storm with both \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ is sometimes called an electrical storm.



## **b** Vocabulary

layer	scattered	floating	roll
observe	debris	ranges	seismology
victim	cope	crushed	thunder
vibration	epicenter	property	unique

1. After the huge wave sank the ship, all you could see was some \_\_\_\_\_ on the surface of the sea.
2. The wind \_\_\_\_\_ my papers all over the room.
3. In a rain forest, the lower \_\_\_\_\_ of plant growth is protected by the upper one.
4. Students who plan to become teachers usually have to \_\_\_\_\_ classes as a first step toward teaching.
5. The freeway bridge fell down because it was near the \_\_\_\_\_ of the earthquake. Its weight \_\_\_\_\_ many cars.
6. When we stand near a busy freeway, we can feel the \_\_\_\_\_ of the traffic under our feet.
7. The yearly pay of an engineer \_\_\_\_\_ from \$17,000 to \$75,000.
8. Mr. Dahood used to be a rich man, but he was a \_\_\_\_\_ of the earthquake and lost all of his \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Sometimes when people have serious problems, they cannot \_\_\_\_\_ with them.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ has helped us find possible earthquake sites.





## Vocabulary Review

Write the correct synonym and antonym for each word in the chart.

### Synonyms

answer	small	dangerous	pick up
complicated	make	take away	balance
consider	allow	until now	wide

### Antonyms

uncomplicated	give	forbid	safe
ignore	drop	not yet	actual
narrow	unit	destroy	huge

	Synonyms	Antonyms
1. lift	<i>pick up</i>	<i>drop</i>
2. complex		
3. so far		
4. create		
5. respond		
6. steal		
7. broad		
8. hazardous		
9. tiny		
10. permit		

## d

### True/False/Not Enough Information

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Today, scientists know something about the causes of earthquakes.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Most earthquakes cause a lot of property damage.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. More than half of the world's earthquakes are too small to cause serious damage.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. More people are killed by huge sea waves than by falling buildings.





- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Seismologists can measure the size of seismic waves.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Removing water from the ground causes earthquakes.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Most of the world's earthquakes are mild.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. An earthquake in 1989 destroyed the city of Oakland.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. People can predict earthquakes by studying the weather.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. *Thermal* means *heat*.



## Comprehension Questions

1. How does movement in the Earth cause earthquakes?
2. What is the epicenter of an earthquake? What is a seismic wave?
3. Why does most of the damage from an earthquake happen near the epicenter?
4. Why are earthquakes dangerous when they happen in the middle of the ocean?
5. What can you look for to predict an earthquake?
6. What was lucky about the earthquake that happened in northeastern China in 1975?
7. How can people protect themselves and their property from earthquakes?
8. Why do people continue to live where there are earthquakes?



## Paraphrasing

*Use your own words to combine the ideas in these two sentences from the text. It is not necessary to use the same number of sentences. You may use more.*

Usually, an earthquake is strong enough to cause damage only near its epicenter.

The amount of destruction caused by an earthquake depends on where it happens, what time it happens, and how strong it is.



## Main Idea

*Write or copy a sentence that is the main idea for these paragraphs.*

1. Paragraph 3 (lines 14–20)
2. Paragraph 8 (lines 49–57)
3. Paragraph 10 (lines 64–71)





## Word Forms

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	respond	response	responsive	responsively
2.	consider	consideration	(in)considerate	(in)considerately
3.		complexity	complex	
4.	educate	education	educational	
5.	create	creation creativity	(un)creative	creatively
6.	value	value	valuable	
7.	observe	observation observatory	(un)observant	
8.	specialize	specialist	special	
9.	explain	explanation	(un)explainable	
10.	believe	belief	(un)believable	(un)believably

- The police \_\_\_\_\_ immediately to our call for help.
- Marge is a very \_\_\_\_\_ person. She thinks of others and what they want, instead of thinking of herself most of the time.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ of modern society affects family life.
- There are a few \_\_\_\_\_ programs on TV.
- Pablo Picasso was a very \_\_\_\_\_ artist. He was known for his \_\_\_\_\_.
- Most people want to have friends. They \_\_\_\_\_ the friendship of people they like.
- After the director of the English program \_\_\_\_\_ classes, she writes up her \_\_\_\_\_.
- She wants to be a doctor who \_\_\_\_\_ in childhood diseases.



9. Can scientists give a clear \_\_\_\_\_ of what actually happens deep in the Earth? No, some of the details are \_\_\_\_\_ so far.
10. Scientists consider it \_\_\_\_\_ that gods create volcanic eruptions.

## **i** Scanning

*Scan the text to find this information. Write a short answer and the number of the line where you found the information.*

1. In 1975, what percentage of the buildings in the city of Haicheng were destroyed? \_\_\_\_\_
2. What did the Mexico City earthquake measure on the Richter Scale?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. What time of day did the earthquake hit northern California in October 1989? \_\_\_\_\_
4. What is the largest number of people killed in an earthquake?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## **I** Two-Word Verbs

*Learn these two-word verbs and then fill in the blanks with the right words. Use the correct verb form. Numbers 2 and 3 use the same expression twice.*

- mix up = mistake one thing for another  
dress up = put on special clothes  
have on = be wearing  
look out = be careful  
spread out = spread over a certain area or time

1. Don't try to learn forty irregular verbs in one day. \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ over a week or two.
2. People usually \_\_\_\_\_ for a party. Children like to \_\_\_\_\_ in their parents' old clothes and pretend that they are adults.



3. She \_\_\_\_\_ her homework assignments and gave the reading homework to the wrong teacher. Then she found out that she had done the wrong page. She was \_\_\_\_\_.
4. \_\_\_\_\_! There's a child in the street!
5. Mike \_\_\_\_\_ his running clothes because he was going to exercise.

## **K** Sequencing

Put these sentences about the October 17, 1989, earthquake in the right order. Number 1 is done for you.

- \_\_\_\_\_ a. Freeways and bridges broke and fell.
- \_\_\_\_\_ b. As electric power lines broke, the dark sky seemed to be full of lightning.
- 1 c. People were driving home in their cars in the afternoon after work.
- \_\_\_\_\_ d. Buildings exploded and pipes broke.
- \_\_\_\_\_ e. Water and gas from broken lines mixed and exploded.
- \_\_\_\_\_ f. The Earth began to shake and roll.
- \_\_\_\_\_ g. People died in their cars when freeways and bridges fell on top of them.
- \_\_\_\_\_ h. Huge clouds of black dust began to cover the sky.
- \_\_\_\_\_ i. Victims could find nothing when they came back.
- \_\_\_\_\_ j. Emergency workers hurried to find survivors and save victims.

## **L** Summarizing

Summarize paragraph 9, lines 58–63. Use your own words to tell the main idea.





## **m** Guided Writing

*Write one of these two short compositions.*

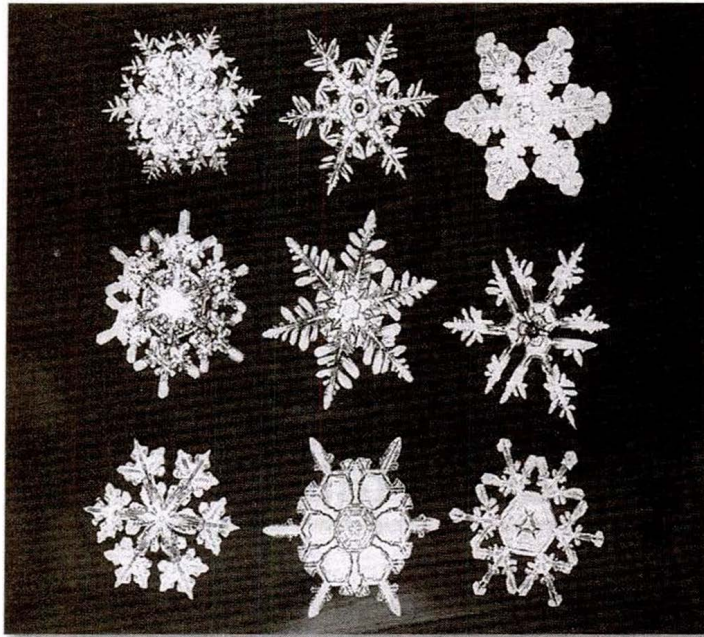
1. You are in a city when an earthquake hits. Describe what happens. Tell what you feel, see, hear, and smell.
2. You are a seismologist. Tell what scientific information you know about earthquakes. Include how and where they happen and what you are studying right now.



# Snow and Hail

lesson

3



© Beithmann/CORBIS

## Before You Read

1. What is the difference between snow and hail?
2. What problems can snow and hail cause?
3. Do you like to look at snow? Do you like to be outside in it?



## Context Clues

The words in **bold print** are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

1. This happens in the **atmosphere**, ten kilometers above the Earth.
2. This sounds **simple**, but it is actually very complex.
3. Hail is a small round ball of **alternating** layers of snow and clear ice.
4. All snowflakes are six-sided, but no one understands why this is so.

### 3 Snow and Hail



Millions of people in the world have never seen snow. Others see more of it than they want to. Hail is much more common; it **occurs** even in deserts.

happens

Each tiny piece of snow is called a **snowflake**, and each flake has six sides or six points. Billions of snowflakes fall every winter, and the **astonishing** fact is that each one is different. A snowflake is as individual as someone's handwriting or **fingerprint**.

amazing

A snowflake forms inside a winter storm cloud when a **microscopic** piece of dust is **trapped** inside a tiny drop of water. This happens in the **atmosphere**, ten kilometers above the Earth. The water freezes around the dust, and as this flake is blown by the wind, it collects more drops of water. These drops freeze too, and the snowflake becomes heavy enough to fall to the Earth. As it falls, it passes through areas where the temperature and humidity vary. It collects more and more tiny drops of water, and the shape continually changes. Some drops fall off and start to form new snowflakes.

not able to escape  
air around the Earth



fingerprint



This sounds **simple**, but it is actually very complex. It is so complex that **mathematicians** using computers are just beginning to understand what happens. Every change in temperature and humidity in the air

25 around the snowflake causes a change in the speed and **pattern** of the snowflake's formation as it makes its trip to the Earth. Since no two flakes follow exactly the same path to the ground, no two snowflakes are exactly alike. However, they are all six-sided. So far, no one

30 understands why this is **so**. true

Hail is a small round ball of **alternating** layers of snow and clear ice. It forms inside thunderclouds. There are two theories about how hailstones form.

One theory says that hail forms when drops of water

35 freeze in the upper air. As they fall, they collect more drops of water, just as snowflakes do. They also collect snow. The ice and snow build up in layers. If you cut a hailstone, you can see these alternating layers.

The other theory says that hail starts as a raindrop.

40 The wind carries it higher into the atmosphere, where it gets covered by snow. It becomes heavy and begins to fall. As it falls, it gets a new layer of water, which freezes. Then the wind carries it back up to the snow region, and it gets another layer of snow. This can

45 happen **multiple** times. Finally, the hailstone is too heavy to travel on the wind, and it falls to the ground.

many; a number of

Only thunderstorms can produce hail, but very few of them do. Perhaps only one in 400 thunderstorms creates hailstones. Hail **ordinarily** falls in a strip from

50 ten to twenty kilometers wide and **up to** forty kilometers long.

usually

no more than

A hailstone is usually less than eight centimeters in diameter. However, hailstones can be much bigger than that. Sometimes they are as big as baseballs. The largest

55 hailstone ever recorded weighed over 680 grams and had a diameter of thirteen centimeters.

Hail can do a lot of damage to agriculture, especially since hail usually appears in **midsummer**, when the plants are partly grown. If the crops are destroyed, it is

60 too late to plant more, and the farmer has lost

the middle of





everything. The most damage is done by hailstones that are only the size of peas. In one terrible hailstorm in 1923 in Rostov, in Ukraine, twenty-three people and many cattle were killed.

65 Snow can cause damage too. It can cave in the roof of a building. A heavy snowstorm can delay airplane flights and cause automobile accidents. Farm animals sometimes die in snowstorms, and when country roads are closed by snow, people can be trapped in their cars  
70 and freeze to death. Yet there is nothing more beautiful than the sight of millions of snowflakes falling at night. That is when people think of the beauty, and not the science, of snowflakes.

## a Vocabulary

ordinarily	mathematics	midsummer	traps
so	atmosphere	snowflake	microscopic
alternating	multiple	up to	fingerprint

1. Hail falls in a strip \_\_\_\_\_ forty kilometers long.
2. In \_\_\_\_\_, the study of lines, angles, and shapes is called geometry.
3. The weather is usually warm or hot in \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Some people use \_\_\_\_\_ to catch animals.
5. Some people still believe that volcanic eruptions are caused by angry gods, but we know this isn't \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Every \_\_\_\_\_ has six sides.
7. The boys and girls lined up in \_\_\_\_\_ rows.
8. Bacteria are \_\_\_\_\_. They can't be seen without a microscope.
9. There are \_\_\_\_\_ reasons to study earthquakes, not just one.



## **b** Vocabulary

occur	fingerprint	up to	atmosphere
ordinarily	hail	so	pattern
trap	microscope	simply	astonished

1. I was \_\_\_\_\_ that I was able to lift 100 pounds. I never thought I could.
2. When did the last eruption of Kilauea \_\_\_\_\_?
3. The police \_\_\_\_\_ criminals.
4. There is a \_\_\_\_\_ to her behavior. She's always happy in the morning and sad in the evening.
5. Humans are polluting the Earth's \_\_\_\_\_.
6. That's a difficult question. I really can't answer it \_\_\_\_\_.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ he leaves for work late, but today he's leaving early.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ can destroy a farmer's crops.

## **c** Vocabulary Review: Definitions

Match each word with its definition.

- |                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| _____ 1. observe         | a. movement of the Earth |
| _____ 2. so far          | b. also                  |
| _____ 3. in addition     | c. ÷                     |
| _____ 4. earthquake      | d. top layer             |
| _____ 5. story           | e. CO <sub>2</sub>       |
| _____ 6. prefer          | f. floor                 |
| _____ 7. divide          | g. fiction               |
| _____ 8. respond         | h. of the sun            |
| _____ 9. permit          | i. watch                 |
| _____ 10. surface        | j. answer                |
| _____ 11. carbon dioxide | k. like better           |
| _____ 12. solar          | l. allow                 |
|                          | m. until now             |



## **d** Short Answers

Write *hail*, *snow*, or *hail and snow* after each of these sentences.

1. As it is blown by the wind, it collects water. \_\_\_\_\_
2. It occurs only in the colder regions of the world. \_\_\_\_\_
3. It is formed of layers of ice and snow. \_\_\_\_\_
4. It can destroy crops. \_\_\_\_\_
5. It can cause the death of humans. \_\_\_\_\_
6. It is sometimes formed around a piece of dust. \_\_\_\_\_
7. It always has six sides or points. \_\_\_\_\_
8. It is produced only by thunderstorms. \_\_\_\_\_
9. It is a small round ball. \_\_\_\_\_
10. It can cause damage. \_\_\_\_\_

## **e** Comprehension Questions

1. Why do all snowflakes have six sides or six points?
2. Snowflakes start forming around two things. What are they?
3. What does a change in humidity do to the formation of a snowflake?
4. Why are no two snowflakes alike?
5. Where do hailstones form?
6. What causes both snowflakes and hail to fall to the ground?
7. How big is the average hailstone?
8. How does hail destroy crops?
9. Give an example of how snow can be destructive.
10. Which is more destructive, hail or snow? Why?
11. Do roadrunners ever see hail?

## **f** Main Idea

1. Write a sentence for the main idea of paragraph 2 (lines 4–8).
2. Write a sentence for the main idea of paragraph 4 (lines 21–30).
3. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 10 (lines 57–64)?



## g

### Word Forms: Negative Prefixes

These are common negative prefixes. Put a word from Number 1 in the first sentence below, and so on. Use the right form of the word.

1. **dis-**: dislike, discomfort, displeasure, disconnect, dishonest
2. **un-**: unequipped, uncreative, unprepared, unobservant
3. **non-**: nonsmoking, nonalcoholic, nonviolent, nonindustrial
4. **in-**: inactive, inconsiderate, incorrect, inexpensive
5. **im-**: impossible, improbable, immovable, imperfect
6. **il-**: illogical, illiterate
7. **ir-**: irregular, irreligious
8. **mis-**: misbehave, misspell, misunderstand, misspeak

1. Alice always \_\_\_\_\_ the television during a thunderstorm.
2. Bering and his men were \_\_\_\_\_ for living on the island after their boat sank.
3. Coke and Pepsi are \_\_\_\_\_ drinks.
4. It is \_\_\_\_\_ to eat something in front of someone else and not offer him or her some.
5. It is \_\_\_\_\_ to squeeze water out of a stone.
6. It is \_\_\_\_\_ to think that someone who is \_\_\_\_\_ is unintelligent.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ verbs must be memorized.
8. There are three \_\_\_\_\_ words in your homework paper.

## h

### Articles

Put articles in the blanks if they are needed.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ snowflake forms inside \_\_\_\_\_ winter storm cloud when \_\_\_\_\_ microscopic piece of dust is trapped inside \_\_\_\_\_ tiny drop of \_\_\_\_\_ water.
2. This happens in \_\_\_\_\_ atmosphere, ten kilometers above \_\_\_\_\_ Earth.





3. \_\_\_\_\_ water freezes around \_\_\_\_\_ dust, and as this flake is blown by \_\_\_\_\_ wind, it collects more drops of \_\_\_\_\_ water.
4. As it falls, it passes through \_\_\_\_\_ areas where \_\_\_\_\_ temperature and \_\_\_\_\_ humidity vary.
5. It is so complex that \_\_\_\_\_ mathematicians using \_\_\_\_\_ computers are just beginning to understand what happens.
6. Every change in \_\_\_\_\_ temperature and \_\_\_\_\_ humidity in \_\_\_\_\_ air causes \_\_\_\_\_ change in \_\_\_\_\_ speed and \_\_\_\_\_ pattern of \_\_\_\_\_ snowflake's formation as it makes its trip to \_\_\_\_\_ Earth.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ hail is \_\_\_\_\_ small round ball of \_\_\_\_\_ alternating layers of \_\_\_\_\_ snow and \_\_\_\_\_ clear ice.



## Compound Words

*Make a one-word or two-word compound using a word from the first column and one from the second.*

- |       |            |            |
|-------|------------|------------|
| _____ | 1. sky     | a. sign    |
| _____ | 2. science | b. surgery |
| _____ | 3. thunder | c. storm   |
| _____ | 4. traffic | d. walk    |
| _____ | 5. diet    | e. scraper |
| _____ | 6. ground  | f. force   |
| _____ | 7. brain   | g. floor   |
| _____ | 8. work    | h. branch  |
| _____ | 9. side    | i. fiction |
| _____ | 10. tree   | j. plan    |



## Summarizing

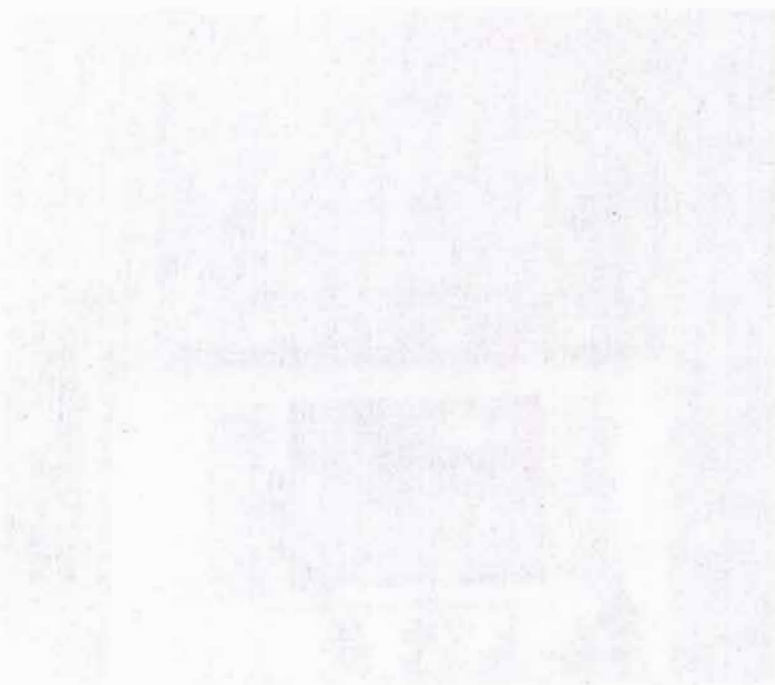
Write a summary of the information about snow. Write five or six sentences.



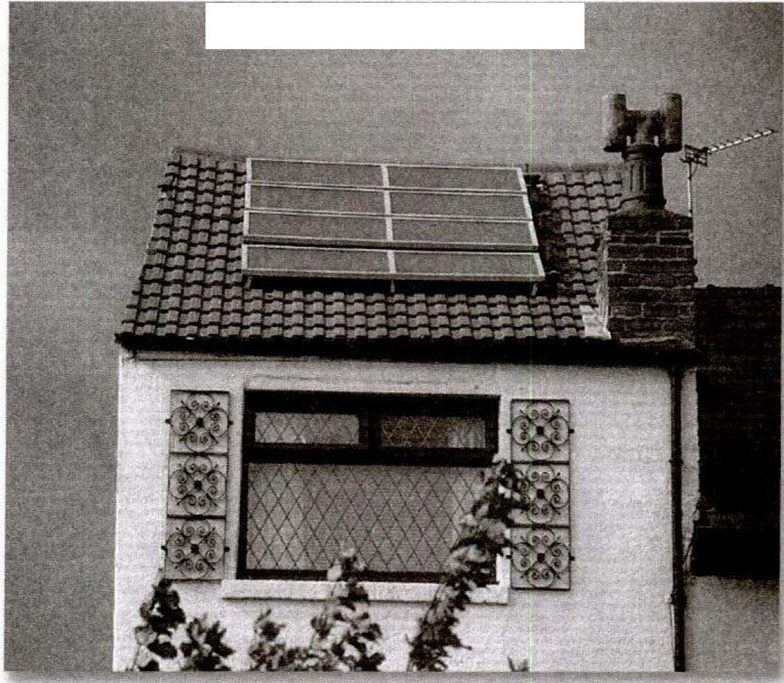
## **k** Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

1. Compare snow and hail.
2. Describe a serious winter storm that you experienced or heard about.



# Photovoltaic Cells: Energy Source of the Future



## Before You Read

1. What is solar energy?
2. Do you have anything with you right now that works by solar energy? If so, what is it?
3. How do we produce electricity? Name as many ways as you know.



## Context Clues

The words in **bold print** below are from the reading in this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

1. A **conductor** is something that electricity can pass through. Water and metals conduct electricity, but wood does not.
2. Another advantage is that it is **solid-state**; that is, there are no moving parts.
3. If the top gets dusty, less light enters, and it doesn't work as **efficiently** as it should.
4. Developing countries cannot export enough agricultural products and other **raw materials**.

# 4 Photovoltaic Cells: Energy Source of the Future



As populations increase and countries industrialize, the world's demand for energy increases. Our supply of petroleum and gas is limited, but the **photovoltaic cell** offers a solution to the problem of a future energy  
5 shortage. This cell is already an important source of energy. In fact, it seems almost like **magic**. The photovoltaic cell changes sunlight directly into energy. Solar energy—energy from the sun—is clean, easily available, **inexhaustible**, and free, if the equipment  
10 is available.

without end;  
limitless

Did you ever reach to open the door at a store or hotel and see it open by itself? Does your camera always let in the right amount of light for your pictures? These are examples of uses of photovoltaic cells. They  
15 are also used in calculators and watches, in remote telecommunication units, and in central power stations to produce electricity. Another important use is in the space exploration program. This program could not **exist** without the energy produced by photovoltaic cells.





20 The photovoltaic cell is simple. It has **transparent** able to be seen  
metallic film at the top. Below this is a layer of **silicon**. through  
A metal base is at the bottom.

The sunlight falls on the **boundary** between the two  
different types of **semiconductors** in the photovoltaic  
25 cell, the silicon and the metal base. A **conductor** is  
something that electricity can pass through. Water and  
metals conduct electricity, but wood does not. A  
semiconductor conducts electricity poorly at low  
temperatures, but when heat or light is added,  
30 conductivity is increased.

As the light falls on this boundary between the two  
types of semiconductors, it creates an electric current.  
The sunlight is **converted** directly into electricity. changed

One advantage of the photovoltaic cell is that it is  
35 **solid-state**; that is, there are no moving parts. **Since** because  
there are no moving parts to break down, the cell will  
last a long time if it is protected from damage. This  
protection is important. If the top of the cell gets dusty,  
less light enters, and the cell doesn't work as **efficiently**  
40 as it should.

In addition, silicon is one of the most common  
elements in the world; for example, sand is made up  
mostly of silicon. At one time, the chemical preparation  
of silicon for use in a photovoltaic cell was very  
45 expensive. Now the cost has gone down a great deal.  
Scientists have also found a way to produce silicon in  
long sheets, similar to the way plastic for plastic bags is  
made today. This is helping the cost of a unit of solar  
energy to fall even more. Today, there are large factories  
50 using solar-cell systems in a number of countries.

About 18% of the sunlight that reaches the  
photovoltaic cell is converted into electricity. This is a  
small amount, so many cells must be used to create a  
**reasonable** amount of electricity. However, technology  
55 can be developed to make the cells more efficient and  
raise the percentage of sunlight converted to 27%.

What does solar energy mean to the world?  
Photovoltaic cells have several advantages over fossil  
fuels (gas, oil, and coal). Fossil fuels that we use today



60 were formed from plants and animals that lived  
millions of years ago. Those plants and animals were  
able to exist because of the sun. Obviously, we can't  
wait a million years for more fossil fuels. The  
photovoltaic cell gives us the ability to produce energy  
65 directly from the sun. The sun's energy can be  
converted for our use immediately.

At the present time, gas and oil are expensive.  
Developing countries cannot **export** enough agricultural  
products and other **raw materials** to allow them to  
70 **import** the fuel that they need to produce energy. At the  
same time, petroleum supplies are limited, and in a few  
decades, they will run out. However, the supply of  
sunlight is limitless, and most of the poor countries of  
the world are in the tropics, where there is plenty of  
75 sunlight.

The photovoltaic cell has another very important  
advantage. It is a clean source of energy. The fossil fuels  
that we use today are the main source of the pollution  
in our atmosphere.

80 Although many individuals and governments have  
been **reluctant** to reduce their dependence on fossil  
fuels, there is a growing market for solar energy. There  
is even discussion of collecting solar energy on satellites  
and then beaming it to Earth. This process is called  
85 Space Solar Power. If we truly want cheaper and  
better ways to create energy, solar power offers  
many possibilities.

sell to other  
countries

hesitant; afraid;  
unwilling



## a Vocabulary

photovoltaic cell	inexhaustible	silicon	semiconductors
solid-state	reluctant	import	exports
magic	raw material	reasonable	exist

1. Scientists think that the \_\_\_\_\_ will be an important energy source for the future.
2. The number of snowflakes is limitless and \_\_\_\_\_.
3. A photovoltaic cell has two different types of \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Many people are \_\_\_\_\_ to try new things.
5. Do you know how many kinds of birds \_\_\_\_\_ in the world today?
6. Children like to see \_\_\_\_\_ shows.
7. Japan \_\_\_\_\_ television sets but has to \_\_\_\_\_ oil.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ is used to make glass.
9. Iron is the main \_\_\_\_\_ for making steel.

## b Vocabulary

exist	reluctant	since	efficient
magical	export	reasonable	transparent
boundary	import	conducts	converts

1. Electric current can pass through metal because metal \_\_\_\_\_ electricity.
2. He was \_\_\_\_\_ to drive at first, but now he loves to drive.
3. Much of the \_\_\_\_\_ between Canada and the United States is a straight line.
4. Abdullah missed the test \_\_\_\_\_ he was late for class.
5. Thirty minutes is a \_\_\_\_\_ length of time for a short test.
6. There is something \_\_\_\_\_ about watching the sun rise.
7. It is more \_\_\_\_\_ for thirty people to ride in a bus than in thirty different cars.



8. Glass is \_\_\_\_\_.
9. A hydroelectric power station \_\_\_\_\_ water power into electricity.

### **C** Vocabulary Review

*Underline the word that does not belong with the others.*

1. hail, snowflake, trap, rain
2. create, damage, destroy, harm
3. definite, sure, exact, bacteria
4. satellite, planet, star, sun
5. consider, object, discuss, talk over
6. backwards, forward, clockwise, sideward
7. physicist, anthropologist, chemist, geologist
8. burst, eruption, flood, earthquake
9. fly, bee, ant, snake

### **d** Multiple Choice

1. Solar energy will not be \_\_\_\_\_ in the future.
  - a. expensive
  - b. easily available
  - c. limitless
2. Sunlight first enters a photovoltaic cell through \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. a metal base
  - b. metallic film
  - c. a layer of silicon
3. The place where the two semiconductors meet is called the \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. border
  - b. conductor
  - c. boundary
4. A semiconductor works best when \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. there is wood available
  - b. the temperature is low
  - c. light or heat is added
5. A photovoltaic cell \_\_\_\_\_ light into electricity.
  - a. current
  - b. converts
  - c. conducts





6. The cell must be protected from \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. dust
  - b. light
  - c. movement
7. At first, these cells were expensive to make because \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. the chemical preparation of silicon was expensive
  - b. silicon is expensive and hard to find
  - c. it is hard to keep dirt off the cells
8. Most of today's air pollution comes from \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. automobiles
  - b. burning fossil fuels
  - c. factories



### Comprehension Questions

1. Why do we need a new way to produce energy?
2. Describe a photovoltaic cell.
3. Give three advantages of photovoltaic cells over fossil fuels.
4. In what part of the cell is the electric current created?
5. What does *solid-state* mean?
6. What happens when a photovoltaic cell gets dusty?
7. Why was energy from photovoltaic cells expensive in the beginning?
8. How can these cells help developing countries?
9. Why are photovoltaic cells so important in the space program?



### Main Idea

1. Which sentence is the main idea of paragraph 1 (lines 1–10)?
2. Write a sentence for the main idea of paragraph 2 (lines 11–19).
3. Write the main idea of paragraph 6 (lines 34–40).
4. What is the main idea of paragraph 9 (lines 57–66)?



### Scanning

1. Name a material in the reading that does not conduct electricity.
2. Name a material in the reading that is made mostly of silicon.
3. Name three fossil fuels.



## **h** Two-Word Verbs

Learn these two-word verbs and then fill in the blanks with the right words. Use the correct verb form.

get in = arrive (for example, a bus or plane)

bring up = raise (for example, children)

show up = appear

stand by = wait at a certain place (for example, for a seat on an airplane when you do not have a reservation)

leave out = skip; forget to include (something)

1. When Ali did his homework, he \_\_\_\_\_ the third exercise. He forgot to do it.
2. What time does the train from Paris \_\_\_\_\_?
3. The airline said there were no seats available on this flight, but if someone doesn't \_\_\_\_\_, I can have that person's seat. I have to \_\_\_\_\_ until everyone has boarded.
4. Mary was born on a farm, but she was \_\_\_\_\_ in a small town.

## **i** Missing Words

Fill in the blanks with any word that fits in the sentence.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ populations increase and countries industrialize, \_\_\_\_\_ world's demand \_\_\_\_\_ energy increases.
2. This cell \_\_\_\_\_ already \_\_\_\_\_ important source \_\_\_\_\_ energy.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ you ever reach \_\_\_\_\_ open \_\_\_\_\_ door \_\_\_\_\_ a store \_\_\_\_\_ hotel \_\_\_\_\_ see it open \_\_\_\_\_ itself?
4. This program could \_\_\_\_\_ exist \_\_\_\_\_ the energy produced \_\_\_\_\_ photovoltaic cells.



5. It has transparent metallic film \_\_\_\_\_ the top.  
\_\_\_\_\_ this is \_\_\_\_\_ layer of silicon.
6. The sunlight falls \_\_\_\_\_ the boundary \_\_\_\_\_  
the two different types \_\_\_\_\_ semiconductors,  
\_\_\_\_\_ silicon \_\_\_\_\_ the metal base.
7. One advantage \_\_\_\_\_ the photovoltaic cell is that it is solid-  
state; \_\_\_\_\_ is, \_\_\_\_\_ are no moving parts.
8. Since there \_\_\_\_\_ no moving parts to break  
\_\_\_\_\_, the cell \_\_\_\_\_ last  
\_\_\_\_\_ long time \_\_\_\_\_ it is protected  
\_\_\_\_\_ damage.
9. If \_\_\_\_\_ top of \_\_\_\_\_ cell  
\_\_\_\_\_ dusty, less \_\_\_\_\_ enters,  
\_\_\_\_\_ the cell \_\_\_\_\_ work as efficiently  
\_\_\_\_\_ it should.



## Word Forms

A common use of adjectives is in sentences of this form:

**It is + adjective** \_\_\_\_\_.

There are two sentence patterns:

It is necessary *to memorize irregular verbs.*

It is beautiful *to walk by the ocean on a moonlit night.*

It is important *that you fill out these papers immediately.*

It is wonderful *that you won first place in the competition.*



Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	trap	trap trapper	trapped	
2.	alternate	alternate alternative	alternate alternative	alternately alternatively
3.	occur	occurrence		
4.	bound	boundary	bound	
5.	theorize	theory	theoretical	theoretically
6.		efficiency	(in)efficient	(in)efficiently
7.		reasonableness	(un)reasonable	(un)reasonably
8.	exhaust	exhaustion	exhausted (in)exhaustible	(in)exhaustibly
9.		transparency	transparent	transparently
10.	convert	conversion	convertible	

1. When an animal is \_\_\_\_\_, it can't get away.
2. There is no \_\_\_\_\_ to our plan. We can find no \_\_\_\_\_ plan.
3. There were three \_\_\_\_\_ of breakdowns at the electric power station.
4. Norway is \_\_\_\_\_ by Sweden, Finland, Russia, the Atlantic Ocean, and the North Sea.
5. Scientists \_\_\_\_\_ about the center of the Earth, but they can't know for sure.
6. It is \_\_\_\_\_ to write by hand instead of using a computer.
7. It is \_\_\_\_\_ to expect a student to memorize fifty new words a day.
8. Scott and his men became \_\_\_\_\_ on their journey back from the South Pole.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ is a characteristic of water and glass.
10. Missionaries try to \_\_\_\_\_ people to their religion.





## **k** Finding the Reason

Write the reason for each statement.

Statement	Reason
1. The entrance door at a hotel opens by itself.	
2. Electricity can pass through water.	
3. The first photovoltaic cells were very expensive.	
4. These cells can help developing countries.	
5. Energy from the sun is inexhaustible.	
6. The photovoltaic cell can't break down.	
7. The photovoltaic cell might work inefficiently.	

## **l** Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

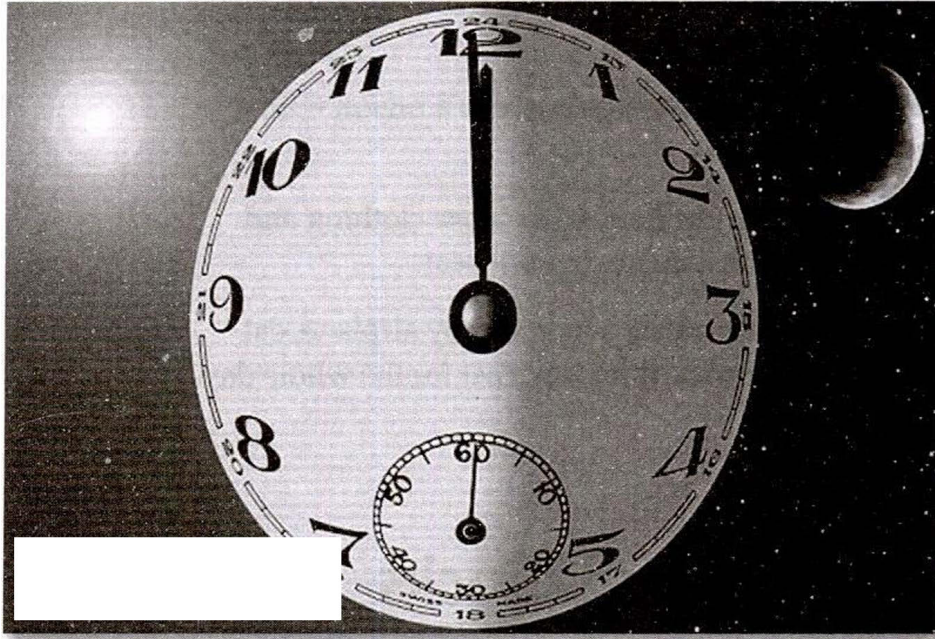
1. What are some of the advantages of solar energy over energy made from fossil fuels?
2. What are some of the disadvantages of solar energy?



# Biological Clocks

lesson

5



## Before You Read

1. How do you feel when you have to get up much earlier than usual?
2. Do you feel best early in the morning, in the middle of the day, in the afternoon, at sunset, or late at night?
3. If you take a long trip on an airplane, do you have trouble getting used to the time change?



## Context Clues

The words in **bold print** are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

1. In the **temperate** zones of the Earth, trees lose their leaves in the fall. In the spring, leaves and flowers begin growing again as the days lengthen.
2. When winter comes, some birds **migrate** to a region with a warmer climate.
3. To be comfortable on an airplane, wear **loose** clothing and take your shoes off while you are in your seat.
4. On the fourth day before taking a long trip by airplane, eat three big meals. Then, on the third day, **fast** for the whole day.

## 5 Biological Clocks



If you have ever flown across several time zones, you have experienced **jet lag**. You arrived in a new time zone, but your body was still living on the time in the old zone. You were **wide awake** and ready for dinner in the middle of the night, and you wanted to sleep all day.

People suffer from jet lag because all living things have a **biological** clock. Plants and animals are all in **rhythm** with the natural divisions of time—day and night and the seasons.

a regular beat

- 10 At sunrise, plants open their leaves and begin producing food. At night, they rest. In the **temperate** zones of the Earth, trees lose their leaves in the fall as the days grow shorter and there is less sunlight. In the spring, leaves and flowers begin growing again as
- 15 the days lengthen.

Rain sets the rhythm of desert plants. Plants in the desert may appear dead for months or even years, but when it begins to rain, the plants seem to come to life



overnight. The leaves turn green, and flowers appear.  
20 The plants produce seeds quickly, before the rain stops. These seeds may lie on the ground for years before rain starts the cycle of growth again. The plants' biological clock gives the **signal** for these things to happen.

25 At **dawn**, most birds wake up and start singing. **sunrise**  
When the sun goes down, they go to sleep. When spring arrives, they start looking for a mate. When winter comes, some birds **migrate** to a region with a warmer climate. Their biological clocks tell them that it is time to  
30 do all of these things.

Animals that live near the sea and depend on both the land and water for their food have their biological clocks set with the **tides**. When the tide goes out, they know that it is time to search for the food that the  
35 sea left behind.

Some insects seem to set their **alarm** clocks to wake them up at night. They stay out all night looking for food, and then they sleep during the day. Honeybees have a very strong sense of time. They can tell by the  
40 position of the sun exactly when their favorite flowers open.

Some French scientists did an experiment with honeybees. They put out sugar water every morning at 10:00 and at noon, and the bees came to drink the  
45 water at exactly the right time. Then the scientists put the sugar water in a room that was brightly lit twenty-four hours a day. They started putting the sugar water out at 8:00 p.m. It took the bees a week to find it at the different hour, but from then on, they  
50 came to eat in the evening instead of in the morning. Later, the scientists took the honeybees to New York. The bees came for the food at the time their bodies told them, only it was 3:00 p.m. New York time. Their bodies were still on Paris time.

55 Humans, like other animals, have a biological clock that tells them when to sleep and eat. It causes other changes too. Blood pressure is lower at night, the **heartbeat** is slower, and the body temperature is a little





60 lower. We even go through several levels of sleep, cycles of deep and light sleep.

Other events occur in cycles too. More babies are born between midnight and dawn than at any other time. More natural deaths occur at night, but more heart **attacks** happen early in the morning. Most deaths from  
65 diseases in hospitals occur between midnight and 6:00 a.m. Some police say that there are more violent crimes and traffic accidents when there is a full moon.

The honeybees in the experiment reset their biological clock for different feeding hours. Humans do  
70 this too. People who work at night learn to sleep during the day and eat at night. Students who fly halfway across the world to study in another country get used to the new time zone after a few days. When they go home, they change back again. Our bodies are  
75 controlled by a biological clock, but we can learn to reset it to a different time.

#### How to Lessen Jet Lag

make less; decrease

1. Try not to become exhausted before you leave. Get  
80 plenty of sleep, and leave enough time to get to the airport and check in without having to hurry.
2. Wear **loose** clothing and take your shoes off while  
you are in your seat. not tight
3. Walk around the plane and move around in your seat.
- 85 4. Figure out breakfast time in the time zone you are flying to. Four days before your flight, start a **feast** (eating a lot) and **fast** (eating nothing or very little) schedule. On the fourth day before you fly, eat three heavy meals. If you drink coffee, tea, or cola drinks  
90 that contain **caffeine**, have them only between 3:00 and 5:00 p.m. On the third day before your flight, eat very lightly—salads, light soups, fruits, and juices. Again, have drinks with caffeine only  
95 between 3:00 and 5:00 p.m. On the next to the last day before you leave, feast again. On the day before you leave, fast. If you are flying west, drink caffeinated drinks in the morning; if you are going east, drink them between 6:00 and 11:00 p.m.



- 100 5. On the day you leave, have your first meal at the time people in the new time zone eat breakfast. If the flight is long, sleep on the plane until the new breakfast time, and don't drink any alcohol. When you wake up, have a big meal. Stay awake and **active**, and eat at the new time zone hours.

## **a** Vocabulary

signal	active	wide awake	attack
alarm	biology	rhythm	jet lag
temperate	migrate	heartbeat	fast

1. Countries with \_\_\_\_\_ climates have four different seasons.
2. The science and study of life is called \_\_\_\_\_.
3. You should drive a car only when you are \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Some people like to listen to the \_\_\_\_\_ of the falling rain.
5. Many people \_\_\_\_\_ for religious reasons.
6. When the fire \_\_\_\_\_ sounded, everyone left the building.
7. Doctors listen to a person's \_\_\_\_\_ through a stethoscope to see if there are any irregularities.
8. Larger animals will often \_\_\_\_\_ smaller animals.
9. Pilots don't usually suffer from \_\_\_\_\_ because they never stay in the new time zone very long.



## **b** Vocabulary

rhythm	dawn	temperate	tides
feast	lessens	migrate	signal
active	caffeine	loose	attack

1. Chocolate, tea, coffee, and cola drinks contain \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The police officer gave a \_\_\_\_\_ for the cars to stop.
3. Some birds \_\_\_\_\_ to a warmer climate in the winter.
4. The villagers prepared a \_\_\_\_\_ to entertain the visiting government officials.
5. There are high and low \_\_\_\_\_ in the ocean twice a day.
6. The sun rises at \_\_\_\_\_.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ is the opposite of *tight*.
8. A different diet \_\_\_\_\_ the effects of jet lag.
9. People who are \_\_\_\_\_ seem to live longer than people who don't get much exercise.

## **c** Vocabulary Review

astonishing	ranges	tools	senses
cope	projects	rolls	layers
flood	colony	mild	surface

1. If you don't like cold winters, you should move to a \_\_\_\_\_ climate.
2. A carpenter cannot work without \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Your biological clock has an \_\_\_\_\_ effect on your body.
4. In cold climates, it makes sense to wear several \_\_\_\_\_ of clothing.
5. Dust on the \_\_\_\_\_ of a photovoltaic cell makes it work inefficiently.
6. Hearing is one of the five \_\_\_\_\_.
7. A ball or other round object \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The temperature here \_\_\_\_\_ from 30°F to 90°F.



9. Biospheres are special \_\_\_\_\_ at some environmental research laboratories.
10. It's difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ when several bad things happen at the same time.

### **d** True/False/Not Enough Information

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Jet lag occurs when your body is in one time zone but your biological clock is in another.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Plants begin producing nutrients when the sun rises.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Plants in Iceland and Greenland can produce nutrients twenty-four hours a day during the summer.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. A biological clock gives birds the signal that it is time to migrate.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Animals that live near the sea search for food at night when it is safer.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. The honeybees in the experiment reset their biological clocks.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. After a few days, the bees probably changed their biological clocks to New York time.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. The human biological clock affects many parts of the body.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Humans cannot change their biological clocks once they are set, but bees can.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. You can decrease the effects of jet lag.

### Comprehension Questions

1. What makes desert plants produce seeds?
2. Why do birds wake at dawn?
3. How do honeybees know when a flower opens?
4. Why do honeybees want to know when a flower opens?
5. What is the time difference between New York and Paris?
6. Why should you wear loose clothing on a long flight?
7. Why should you have breakfast at breakfast time in the new time zone on the day you leave?





## Main Idea

Copy or write a sentence for the main idea of each of these paragraphs.

1. Paragraph 4 (lines 16–24)
2. Paragraph 8 (lines 42–54)
3. Paragraph 9 (lines 55–60)
4. Paragraph 11 (lines 68–76)

## g Word Forms: Adjectives

Both the **-ing** form of the verb (the present participle) and the **-ed** form (the past participle) are used as adjectives. The **-ed** form often shows that the noun received the action, or it describes how a person feels. The **-ing** form often shows some action that the noun took, or it describes an object or possibly a person. However, there are many exceptions.

David was **bored** because the movie was **boring**.

Tome is **interested** in stamps. He thinks stamps are **interesting**.

Mary is an **interesting** person because she can talk about a lot of different things.

Put the right participle form of the verb in parentheses in each sentence.

1. Climbing a mountain is (exhaust) \_\_\_\_\_ work.
2. Al was (exhaust) \_\_\_\_\_ after the soccer game.
3. Mr. Davis is a very (demand) \_\_\_\_\_ teacher. He makes the students work hard and do their best.
4. There are two kinds of electric current, direct and (alternate) \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The (trap) \_\_\_\_\_ animal couldn't escape.
6. A (damage) \_\_\_\_\_ car needs to be fixed.
7. Children like to play (guess) \_\_\_\_\_ games.
8. The breakup of their marriage was a (surprise) \_\_\_\_\_ event.
9. American football is a (complicate) \_\_\_\_\_ game.
10. Being in an airplane crash is a (terrify) \_\_\_\_\_ experience.



## **h** Word Forms: Semi-

**Semi-** is a prefix that means *half* or *partly*. These are some common words with this prefix:

- semicircle
- semicolon (;)
- semitransparent
- semifinal (describing the next-to-last round in sports competitions);  
semifinalist
- semitropical (Hawaii is semitropical, but it is not in the tropics.)
- semiyearly (twice a year)
- semiretired
- semiprivate (describing a hospital room with beds for two or  
three patients)
- semiprecious

*Use five of these words in interesting sentences.*

## **1** Prepositions

*Put the right preposition in each blank.*

1. If you have ever flown \_\_\_\_\_ several time zones, you have experienced jet lag.
2. You arrived \_\_\_\_\_ a new time zone, but your body was still living \_\_\_\_\_ the time \_\_\_\_\_ the old zone.
3. You were wide awake and ready \_\_\_\_\_ dinner \_\_\_\_\_ the middle \_\_\_\_\_ the night.
4. Plants and animals are all \_\_\_\_\_ rhythm \_\_\_\_\_ the natural divisions \_\_\_\_\_ time.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ the temperate zones \_\_\_\_\_ the Earth, trees lose their leaves \_\_\_\_\_ the fall as the days grow shorter.
6. Plants \_\_\_\_\_ the desert may appear dead \_\_\_\_\_ months or even years.
7. Some animals depend \_\_\_\_\_ the sea for their food.
8. Some insects wake up \_\_\_\_\_ night.



9. Honeybees can tell \_\_\_\_\_ the position \_\_\_\_\_ the sun exactly when their favorite flowers open.
10. Scientists put out sugar water every morning \_\_\_\_\_ 10:00 and \_\_\_\_\_ noon.

## **J** Connecting Words

Use *since, when, until, or even though* to connect a sentence from the first column with one from the second column.

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. The bees were ready to eat their evening meal. | a. It was only 3:00 p.m. in New York. |
| 2. It has been snowing.                           | b. It kept her awake.                 |
| 3. Chris stopped drinking coffee in the evening.  | c. It becomes dusty.                  |
| 4. Birds start singing.                           | d. The sun went down.                 |
| 5. A photovoltaic cell is efficient.              | e. The sun rises.                     |

## **K** Sequence

Put these sentences about the French experiment in the right order.

- \_\_\_\_\_ a. The scientists took the bees to New York.
- \_\_\_\_\_ b. Some French scientists did an experiment.
- \_\_\_\_\_ c. They put the sugar water out at 8:00 p.m.
- \_\_\_\_\_ d. They put the sugar water out at 10:00 a.m. and at noon.
- \_\_\_\_\_ e. The bees looked for food at 3:00 p.m. New York time.
- \_\_\_\_\_ f. The bees took a week to find the food at a different time.
- \_\_\_\_\_ g. The bees came every evening at 8:00 p.m.





## Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

1. What does *biological clock* mean? Give examples.
2. Describe a time when you experienced jet lag.





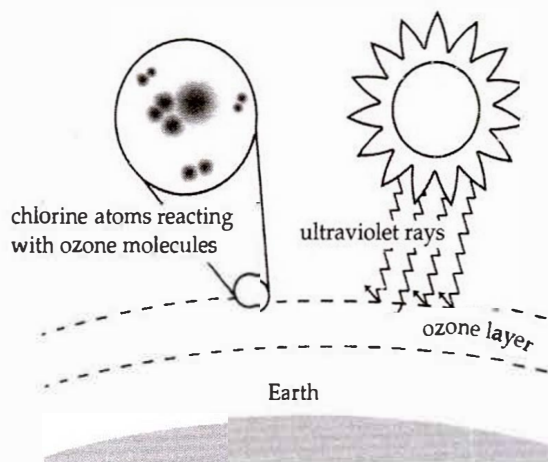
# Video Highlights



## Before You Watch

1. Use your own knowledge and a world map to discuss these questions.
  - a. Which hemisphere of the Earth do you live in, the Northern Hemisphere or the Southern Hemisphere?
  - b. Is it safe or dangerous to spend a lot of time in direct sunlight? Why?
  - c. What are some of the things people use that cause damage to the Earth's atmosphere?
2. The paragraph below describes a chemical process that takes place in the Earth's atmosphere. Use the diagram to fill in the missing words.

The ozone layer is part of the atmosphere that surrounds the Earth. It is made up of ozone ( $O_3$ ) molecules, which form a protective shield against the \_\_\_\_\_ rays of the sun. Some of the things people use every day are causing serious damage to the ozone layer. For example, chemicals used for air conditioning and refrigerators release harmful chlorine (Cl) molecules into the atmosphere. The chlorine molecules react with the \_\_\_\_\_ molecules to break them down. This process gradually eats up the ozone layer.



## b As You Watch

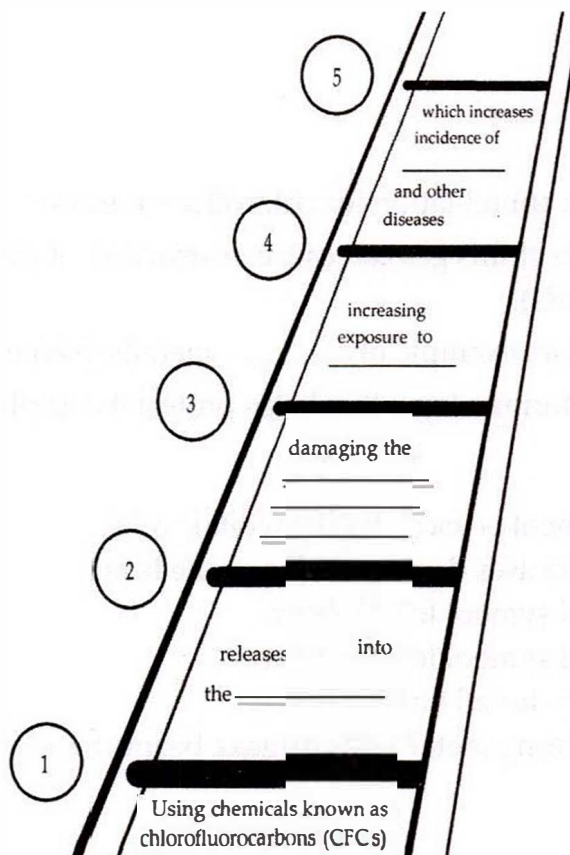
According to the scientists in the video, which of the following is the main cause of damage to the ozone layer?

- flights over the Northern Hemisphere
- ultraviolet rays from the sun
- widespread use of manmade chemicals

## c After You Watch

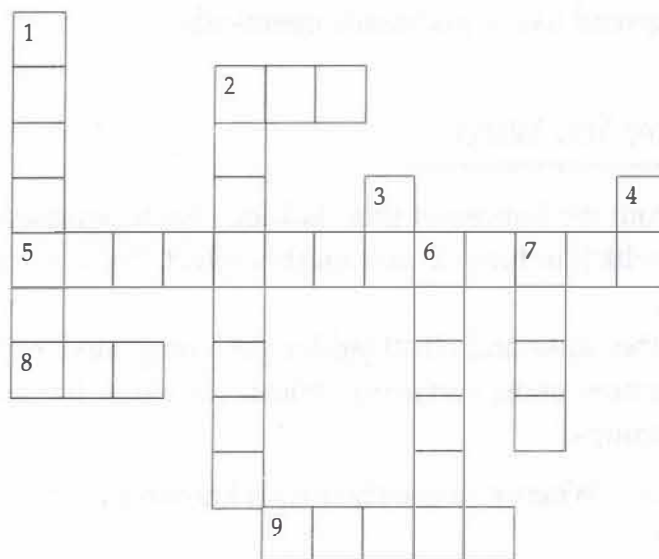
1. Start from the bottom of this "ladder." Each cause leads to an effect, which in turn causes another effect. Fill in the missing words.
2. Using the cause and effect ladder you completed, explain to a partner how using certain chemicals can cause harm to all living things.

*Example:* When you use chemicals known as CFCs, they release . . .



# Activity Page

## Chemical Crossword Puzzle



### Across

2. Common abbreviation for chlorofluorocarbon
5. Too much of this gas can cause destruction of the rain forest (two words).
8. Silicon is an example of a \_\_\_\_\_-metallic element.
9. This gas forms a layer that helps protect the Earth from the sun.

### Down

1. This element is used in photovoltaic cells.
2. This gas causes damage to the ozone layer.
3. Chemical symbol for #1 down
4. Chemical symbol for #7 down
6. Necessary for all animal life
7. A very strong metal used to make beams for skyscrapers



## Doing Dictionary Research

1. Look up the word *geothermal* in your dictionary. How many other words do you see that begin with *geo*-?

**ge·og·ra·phy** /dʒi'ɑgrəfi/ *n.* **1** the scientific study of the earth's surface, features, climate, people, etc.: *I bought a new atlas for my geography class.* **2** the way parts of a place are positioned within it, (*syn.*) layout: *I can't meet you inside the mall because I don't know the geography of the place, and I might get lost.* -*adj.* **geographic** /,dʒiə'græfɪk/.

**ge·ol·o·gy** /dʒi'ələdʒi/ *n.* the scientific study of the earth through its rocks, soil, etc.: *In geology we studied the rocks and deserts of California.* -*n.* **geologist**; -*adj.* **geologic** /,dʒiə'lɑdʒɪk/.

**ge·o·met·ric** /,dʒiə'metɪk/ *adj.* with regular shapes and lines: *The mosque's walls are decorated with geometric designs.*

**ge·om·e·try** /dʒi'əmætri/ *n.* the study in mathematics of lines, angles, shapes, etc.: *It is important to study geometry if you want to be an architect.*

**ge·o·phys·ics** /,dʒiə'fɪzɪks/ *n.pl. used with a sing. v.* the study in geology that uses physics to examine the movements and activities of the earth

**ge·o·pol·i·tics** /,dʒiə'pələtɪks/ *n.pl. used with a sing. v.* the study of how geography affects the politics of a country

**ge·o·ther·mal** /,dʒiə'θɜrməl/ *adj.* related to heat found deep inside the earth: *The geysers in Yellowstone National Park are geothermal because of hot water coming from inside the earth. See: geyser.*





2. This dictionary page has seven words beginning with *geo-*. Read their definitions and answer the following questions.
  - a. How are the meanings of the words *geography*, *geology*, *geometric*, *geophysics*, and *geopolitics* alike?
  - b. What do you think the prefix *geo-* means?
3. Look up the words *psychology*, *microscopic*, and *semiconductor* in your dictionary. Look for other words nearby that have related meanings. Then complete the chart below.

Word	Related Word	Prefix	Meaning
psychology	<i>psychopath</i> <i>psychic</i>	<i>psych-</i>	<i>related to the mind</i>
microscopic			
semiconductor			



# Medicine and Health

# unit 5

*Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise.*  
—Benjamin Franklin





# Headaches



## Before You Read

1. How often do you have a headache?
2. What causes you to have a headache?
3. How do you treat your headaches?



## Context Clues

The words in **bold print** are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

1. Sometimes headaches start with a change in **vision**. The person sees wavy lines, black dots, or bright spots in front of the eyes.
2. Some headaches cause **blurred** vision, and you can't read or drive.
3. **Cluster** headaches come in clusters, or groups, for two or three months.
4. If you have a headache and it continues over several days, or keeps **recurring**, it is time to talk to a doctor.

# 1 Headaches



Some little man is inside your head, **pounding** on your brain with a **hammer**. Beside him, a rock musician is playing a drum. Your head feels as if it is going to explode. You have a **headache**, and you think it will  
5 never go away.



hammer

Doctors say that there are several kinds of headaches. Each kind begins in a different place and needs a different treatment. One kind of headache starts in the **arteries** in the head. The arteries **swell** and send **pain**  
10 signals to the brain. Sometimes these headaches start with a change in **vision**. The person sees wavy lines, black dots, or bright spots in front of the eyes. This is a **warning** that a headache is coming. The headache occurs on only one side of the head. Vision is **blurred**, and the  
15 person may **vomit** from the pain. These headaches, which are called **migraine** headaches, are more frequent in women than in men. Sleep is the best cure for them.

get larger

ability to see; sight





**Cluster** headaches, which also start in the arteries, are called cluster headaches because they come in  
20 clusters, or groups, for two or three months. Then there are no more for several months or even years. A cluster headache lasts up to two hours and then goes away. At the beginning of the headache, the eyes are red and watery. There is a **steady** pain in the head. When the  
25 pain finally goes away, the head is **sore**. Men have more cluster headaches than women do.

The muscle headache, which starts in the muscles in the neck or **forehead**, is caused by **tension**. A person works too hard, is nervous about something, or has  
30 problems at work, at school, or at home. The neck and head muscles become tense, and the headache starts. A muscle headache usually starts in the morning and gets worse as the hours pass. There is a steady pain, pressure, and a bursting feeling. Usually **aspirin** doesn't  
35 help a muscle headache very much.

How do doctors treat headaches? If a person has frequent headaches, the doctor first has to decide what kind they are. Medicine can help, but there are other ways to treat them.

40 The doctor asks the patient to **analyze** his or her daily living patterns. A change in diet or an increase in exercise might stop the headaches. If the **patient** realizes that difficulties at home, at work, or at school are causing the tension, it might be possible to make **lifestyle**  
45 changes and decrease these problems. Psychological problems and even medicine for another **physical**  
50 serious problem.

Everyone has headaches from time to time. In the United States alone, up to 50 million people each year go to the doctor because of headaches. If you have a headache and it continues over several days, or keeps  
55 **recurring**, it is time to talk to a doctor. There is no magic cure for headaches, but recent research allows doctors to control most of them.

continuing  
painful



of the body

occurring again



## a Vocabulary

pounded	swells	lifestyle	migraine
clusters	sore	forehead	aspirin
recur	analyze	pain	hammer

1. To \_\_\_\_\_ means to *happen again*.
2. If your arm is \_\_\_\_\_, it hurts. You have a \_\_\_\_\_ in your arm.
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ is the top part of the face.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ helps some kinds of headaches.
5. When we went to our friend's apartment, we knocked and then \_\_\_\_\_ on the door, but no one answered.
6. One kind of headache is called a \_\_\_\_\_.
7. A \_\_\_\_\_ is one kind of tool.
8. When you put air in a bicycle tire, the tire \_\_\_\_\_ until it fits the wheel exactly.
9. After the TOEFL test, the students gathered in small \_\_\_\_\_ to talk about it.
10. Even though he is very rich, his \_\_\_\_\_ is just like an ordinary person's.
11. Before you do anything, you should \_\_\_\_\_ the situation carefully.

## b Vocabulary

ache	warned	blurred	arteries
vomit	hammer	physical	swell
steady	patients	vision	tense

1. When you are sick and in pain, your stomach may protest and make you \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The teacher \_\_\_\_\_ the children that they had to behave or there would be no party.
3. Sick people in the hospital are called \_\_\_\_\_.



4. While Pat was swimming, she got water in her eye. Everything looked \_\_\_\_\_ to her.
5. Students often feel \_\_\_\_\_ before an important exam.
6. A complete \_\_\_\_\_ examination is necessary for anyone entering the army.
7. The farmers were happy when a \_\_\_\_\_ rain continued all night.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ carry blood from the heart to the rest of the body.
9. You may get a stomach \_\_\_\_\_ if you eat too much.
10. People with poor \_\_\_\_\_ wear glasses or contact lenses.

### **c** Vocabulary Review: Antonyms

*Match the opposites.*

- |                    |               |
|--------------------|---------------|
| _____ 1. fiction   | a. point      |
| _____ 2. scatter   | b. import     |
| _____ 3. active    | c. nonfiction |
| _____ 4. reluctant | d. ordinary   |
| _____ 5. unique    | e. microscope |
| _____ 6. last      | f. run out    |
| _____ 7. export    | g. gather     |
| _____ 8. loose     | h. increase   |
| _____ 9. fast      | i. inactive   |
| _____ 10. lessen   | j. eager      |
|                    | k. feast      |
|                    | l. tight      |

### **d** Multiple Choice

1. When someone sees black dots or wavy lines, this is a change in \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. blurring
  - b. clusters
  - c. vision



2. A migraine headache causes \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. blurred vision
  - b. red and watery eyes
  - c. a bursting feeling
3. \_\_\_\_\_ is the best cure for migraines.
  - a. Sleep
  - b. Aspirin
  - c. Arteries
4. \_\_\_\_\_ have more headaches that leave the head sore.
  - a. Women
  - b. Men
  - c. Older people
5. A \_\_\_\_\_ headache starts in the morning and gets worse.
  - a. migraine
  - b. cluster
  - c. muscle
6. Tension causes a \_\_\_\_\_ headache.
  - a. migraine
  - b. cluster
  - c. muscle
7. Medicine is \_\_\_\_\_ headaches.
  - a. the best treatment for
  - b. not usually helpful for
  - c. one way to treat
8. A change in a patient's lifestyle can \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. help cure headaches
  - b. cause headaches
  - c. both a and b



### Comprehension Questions

1. Describe a migraine headache.
2. Describe a cluster headache.
3. Describe a muscle headache.
4. Which kind of headache affects more women than men?





5. What are some things that can cause a muscle headache?
6. If you have a headache, will aspirin help?
7. Why does a doctor analyze the life patterns of a headache patient?
8. How many people each year in the United States go to a doctor for headaches?



## Main Idea

Write the main idea of each of these paragraphs.

1. Paragraph 2 (lines 6–17)
2. Paragraph 3 (lines 18–26)
3. Paragraph 7 (lines 51–57)



## Word Forms

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	press	pressure		
2.		reluctance	reluctant	reluctantly
3.	migrate	migration	migrant	
4.	lessen	least	less	
5.	warn	warning		
6.	pain	pain	painful painless	painfully painlessly
7.	swell	swelling	swollen	
8.	recur	recurrence	recurrent	recurrently
9.	tense	tension	tense	tensely
10.	prove	proof	proven	



1. Mr. Johnson has high blood \_\_\_\_\_. He has to take medicine every day.
2. She \_\_\_\_\_ agreed to play basketball.
3. Scientists study the \_\_\_\_\_ of birds.
4. The pain of some headaches is \_\_\_\_\_ by aspirin.
5. A fire alarm is a \_\_\_\_\_ to leave the building.
6. A broken arm is \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Dan hurt his hand, and now it is \_\_\_\_\_.
8. After the fifth \_\_\_\_\_ of a bad headache, Mark went to a doctor.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ causes muscle headaches.
10. Scientists have \_\_\_\_\_ that photovoltaic cells convert sunlight directly into energy. This was \_\_\_\_\_ some years ago.

## **h** Scanning

Scan the text to assign each of these sentences to the correct column. In the correct column, write the number of the line in the text where you found the idea.

	Migraine	Cluster	Muscle
a. They come in groups.			
b. It starts in the neck or forehead.			
c. It is caused by tension.			
d. There is a change in vision.			
e. There may not be any for several years.			
f. Aspirin doesn't help.			
g. Sleep helps.			
h. It occurs on only one side of the head.			
i. It lasts for two hours or less.			
j. Problems at work can cause it.			



## Noun Substitutes

What do these words stand for?

1. page 227 line 2      **him**      \_\_\_\_\_
2. page 227 line 3      **it**      \_\_\_\_\_
3. page 227 line 12      **this**      \_\_\_\_\_
4. page 227 line 17      **them**      \_\_\_\_\_
5. page 228 line 18      **which**      \_\_\_\_\_
6. page 228 line 27      **which**      \_\_\_\_\_
7. page 228 lines 40      **his or her**      \_\_\_\_\_
8. page 228 line 57      **them**      \_\_\_\_\_

## Articles

*Put articles in the blanks if they are necessary.*

1. Beside him, \_\_\_\_\_ rock musician is playing \_\_\_\_\_ drum.
2. Each kind begins in \_\_\_\_\_ different place and needs \_\_\_\_\_ different treatment.
3. One kind of headache starts in \_\_\_\_\_ arteries in \_\_\_\_\_ head.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ arteries swell and send \_\_\_\_\_ pain signals to \_\_\_\_\_ brain.
5. Sometimes these headaches start with a change in \_\_\_\_\_ vision.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ person sees \_\_\_\_\_ wavy lines, \_\_\_\_\_ black dots, or \_\_\_\_\_ bright spots in front of \_\_\_\_\_ eyes.
7. This is \_\_\_\_\_ warning that \_\_\_\_\_ headache is coming.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ headache occurs on only one side of \_\_\_\_\_ head.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ vision is blurred, and \_\_\_\_\_ person may vomit from \_\_\_\_\_ pain.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ sleep is \_\_\_\_\_ best cure for them.





## Verb + Adjective

Adjectives usually follow these verbs: **be, feel, become, seem, act, appear, look, smell, taste.**

She is sick.

He appears tired.

She feels sick.

He looks tired.

She became sick a week ago.

It smells good.

He seems tired.

It tastes good.

He acts tired.

*Use each verb in an interesting sentence.*



## Guided Writing

*Write one of these two short compositions.*

1. Describe the different kinds of headaches.
2. Discuss ways to treat and cure headaches.





lesson

2

# Sleep and Dreams



## Before You Read

1. How often do you dream?
2. Do you walk in your sleep?
3. Why do you think we dream?



## Context Clues

The words in **bold print** are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

1. Scientists have learned a **great deal** by studying people as they sleep, but there is still much that they don't understand.
2. Your brain never really sleeps. It is never actually **blank**.
3. During a dream, the brain may **concentrate** on a problem and look for different solutions.
4. Some people grind their teeth while they sleep. They wake up with a sore **jaw** or a headache.
5. Lots of people take sleeping pills, but these are dangerous because they can be **addictive**. If you take them for several weeks, it is hard to stop taking them.

## 2 Sleep and Dreams



Sleep is very important to humans; the average person spends 220,000 hours of his or her lifetime sleeping. Doctors and scientists have learned **a great deal** in the last thirty years by studying people as they

5 sleep, but there is still much that they don't understand.

a lot

Scientists study the body characteristics that change during sleep, such as body temperature, brain waves, blood pressure, breathing, and heartbeat. They also study rapid eye movement (REM). These scientists have

10 learned that there is a kind of sleep with REM and another kind with no rapid eye movement (NREM).

NREM is divided into three **stages**. In stage one, when you start to go to sleep, you have a pleasant floating feeling. A sudden noise can wake you up. In

15 stage two, you sleep more deeply, and a noise will



probably not wake you. In stage three, which you reach in less than thirty minutes, the brain waves are less active and stretched out. Then, within another half hour, you reach REM sleep. This stage might last an hour and a half and is the time when you dream. For the rest of the night, REM and NREM sleep alternate.

Sleep is a biological need, but your brain never really sleeps. It is never actually **blank**. The things that were on your mind during the day are still there at night. They appear as dreams. At times, people believed that dreams had magical powers or that they could tell the future.

Sometimes dreams are **terrifying**, but they are usually a collection of scattered, **confused** thoughts. If you dream about something that is worrying you, you may wake up exhausted, **sweating**, and with a rapid heartbeat. Dreams can have positive effects on our lives. During a dream, the brain may **concentrate** on a problem and look for different solutions. Also, people who dream during a good night's sleep are more likely to remember newly learned skills. In other words, you learn better if you dream.

Researchers say that normal people may have four or five REM **periods** of dreaming a night. The first one may begin only a half hour after they fall asleep. Each period of dreaming is a little longer, the final one lasting up to an hour. Dreams also become more **intense** as the night continues. **Nightmares** usually occur toward dawn.

Certain people can control some of their dreams and make sure they have a happy ending. Some people get **relief** from bad dreams by writing them down and then changing the negative stories or thoughts into positive ones on paper. Then they study the paper before they go to sleep again.

Sleepwalking is most common among children. They usually grow out of it by the time they become **adolescents**. Children don't remember that they were walking in their sleep, and they don't usually wake up if the parent leads them back to bed.

Some people have a **habit** of grinding their teeth while they sleep. They wake up with a sore **jaw** or a headache, and they can also damage their teeth.



sweating

mixed up

think hard

lengths of time

very strong

bad dreams

teenagers





Researchers don't know why people talk, walk, or grind their teeth while they are asleep.

There are lots of jokes about **snoring**, but it isn't really funny. People snore because they have trouble  
60 breathing while they are asleep. Some snorers have a condition called sleep apnea. They stop breathing up to thirty or forty times an hour because the throat muscles relax too much and **block** the airway. Then they breathe in some air and start snoring. This is a dangerous  
65 condition because, if the brain is without oxygen for four minutes, there will be **permanent** brain damage. Sleep apnea can also cause irregular heartbeats, high blood pressure, and a general lack of energy.

lasting forever

Most people need from 7½ to 8½ hours of sleep a  
70 night, but this varies with the individual. Babies sleep eighteen hours, and old people need less sleep than younger people. If someone continually sleeps longer than normal for no **apparent** reason, there may be something physically or psychologically wrong.

obvious; adjective for appear

75 What should you do if you have trouble sleeping? Lots of people take sleeping pills, but these are dangerous because they can be **addictive**. If you take them for several weeks, it is hard to stop taking them.

Doctors say the best thing is to try to relax and to  
80 avoid bad habits. Caffeine keeps people awake, so don't drink anything with caffeine in the evening. Smoking and alcohol can also keep you awake. You may have trouble sleeping if you have a heavy meal just before you go to bed.

85 You may also have trouble sleeping if you have something on your mind. Try to relax. If you are thinking about a problem or about something exciting that is going to happen the next day, get up and write about it. That will help take it off your mind. You can also get up and  
90 read or watch television. Be sure to choose a book or show that is not too exciting, or you may get so interested that you won't want to go to sleep even when you feel sleepy.

Sleep is important to humans. We spend a third of our lives sleeping, so we need to understand everything  
95 we can about sleep. Sweet dreams!





## **a** Vocabulary

stage	periods	snore	habit
blank	nightmare	confused	block
a great deal	relief	sweat	concentrate

1. It is hard to \_\_\_\_\_ on your homework if your roommate is playing loud music.
2. The instructor asked everyone to take out a \_\_\_\_\_ piece of paper.
3. In the first \_\_\_\_\_ of a volcanic eruption, the volcano sends out smoke.
4. A \_\_\_\_\_ is a bad dream.
5. Do you \_\_\_\_\_ loudly when you sleep?
6. The school day is divided into several \_\_\_\_\_, one for each class.
7. It's a \_\_\_\_\_ when the sun comes out after a bad storm.
8. Sylvia has a \_\_\_\_\_ of having a cup of coffee as soon as she gets home from work.
9. Hard exercise makes you \_\_\_\_\_.
10. A Mercedes-Benz is a car that costs \_\_\_\_\_ of money.

## **b** Vocabulary

confused	concentrate	intense	adolescents
jaws	blank	apparently	addictive
habit	block	permanently	relieve

1. The teeth are in the upper and lower \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The \_\_\_\_\_ summer heat of the Arabian Desert can be very dangerous if you're not careful.
3. A car accident can \_\_\_\_\_ traffic on a highway.
4. David was \_\_\_\_\_ about the date, so he missed the meeting.
5. It's difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ when you are trying to do two things at the same time.



6. An immigrant plans to stay in a new country \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The professor seems to be very busy. \_\_\_\_\_, he has a lot of work to do.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ are not children, but they are not grown up either.
9. Smoking is \_\_\_\_\_, so it's better not to even start smoking.

## **C** Vocabulary Review: Definitions

Match the words with the definitions.

- |                        |                                    |
|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| _____ 1. melt          | a. middle                          |
| _____ 2. mid-          | b. soreness                        |
| _____ 3. strip         | c. fingerprint                     |
| _____ 4. export        | d. reasonable                      |
| _____ 5. pain          | e. with no moving parts            |
| _____ 6. inexhaustible | f. change from a solid to a liquid |
| _____ 7. solid-state   | g. not able to be seen through     |
| _____ 8. source        | h. because                         |
| _____ 9. transparent   | i. long, thin piece                |
| _____ 10. boundary     | j. place                           |
| _____ 11. since        | k. sell to other countries         |
| _____ 12. position     | l. not able to be used up          |
| _____ 13. astonishing  | m. place something comes from      |
|                        | n. border                          |
|                        | o. surprising                      |

## **d** True/False/Not Enough Information

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. We spend about a third of our lives sleeping.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Researchers now understand nearly everything about sleep.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. NREM sleep comes before the REM stage.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. After the three stages of NREM, REM lasts the rest of the night.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Dreams occur during the REM stage, but the brain is normally blank the rest of the time.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. A dream about an unhappy event can change your heartbeat.



- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Nightmares occur early, when dreams are short.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. Sleep apnea is the cause of some snoring.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. Five or six hours of sleep is enough for some people.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. The best thing to do when you have trouble sleeping is to take sleeping pills.



## Comprehension Questions

1. How have researchers learned about sleep?
2. What does *REM* mean?
3. How do dreams change as the sleep period continues?
4. Can sleepwalking be dangerous? Give a reason for your answer.
5. Why do some people grind their teeth while they sleep?
6. How can sleep apnea cause brain damage?
7. Name three things that can keep you awake.
8. How does a problem keep you from sleeping?



## Main Idea

*Find or write a sentence for the main idea of each of these paragraphs.*

1. Paragraph 3 (lines 12–21)
2. Paragraph 4 (lines 22–26)
3. Paragraph 6 (lines 36–41)
4. Paragraph 11 (lines 69–74)



## Scanning

*Write short answers for these questions and the line numbers on which you found the answers.*

1. In what stage of NREM sleep can a sudden noise wake you up?
2. Why do people snore?
3. Why is it a bad idea to take sleeping pills?
4. How many REM periods of dreaming do people normally have?
5. What did some people believe about dreams?
6. What should you do if you can't sleep because you are thinking about an exciting event the next day?
7. Is it possible to control dreams?
8. How many hours a day do babies sleep?





## Connecting Words

Use *before*, *after*, *although*, or *since* to connect a sentence from the first column with one in the second.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Scientists don't know everything about sleep. | a. You go to bed.                                    |
| 2. We shouldn't laugh about snoring.             | b. It isn't really funny.                            |
| 3. Don't eat a heavy meal.                       | c. The NREM stage begins.                            |
| 4. Go to bed and get up at about the same time.  | d. They have learned a lot in the last thirty years. |
| 5. The REM stage begins.                         | e. This sets a rhythm in your life.                  |



## Missing Words

Write any word that is correct in each blank.

1. Sleep is very important \_\_\_\_\_ humans; \_\_\_\_\_ average person spends 220,000 hours of his or her lifetime sleeping.
2. They have learned \_\_\_\_\_ great deal \_\_\_\_\_ studying people as they sleep.
3. Scientists study \_\_\_\_\_ body characteristics that change \_\_\_\_\_ sleep.
4. NREM \_\_\_\_\_ divided \_\_\_\_\_ three stages.
5. You reach stage three \_\_\_\_\_ less \_\_\_\_\_ thirty minutes.
6. Sleep is \_\_\_\_\_ biological need, \_\_\_\_\_ your brain never really sleeps.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ things that were \_\_\_\_\_ your mind during \_\_\_\_\_ day are still there \_\_\_\_\_ night.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ times, people believed \_\_\_\_\_ dreams had magical powers \_\_\_\_\_ that they could tell \_\_\_\_\_ future.
9. Dreams can have \_\_\_\_\_ positive effects \_\_\_\_\_ our lives.





## j Word Forms

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	convert	conversion		
2.		habit	habitual	habitually
3.	concentrate	concentration	concentrated	
4.	confuse	confusion	confused	
5.		intensity	intense	intensely
6.		adolescence	adolescent	
7.	breathe	breath breathing	breathless	breathlessly
8.		permanence	permanent	permanently
9.	loosen	looseness	loose	loosely
10.	(dis)appear	(dis)appearance	apparent	apparently

- You can \_\_\_\_\_ your money into dollars at the bank.
- The present tense is used for \_\_\_\_\_ actions.
- Great \_\_\_\_\_ is necessary for the game of chess.
  - Most of Australia's population is \_\_\_\_\_ on the east coast.
- There was a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ about the new class schedule, but now it is all cleared up and things are going smoothly. At first, the students were \_\_\_\_\_.
- Susan feels everything very \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is a difficult time for some young Americans and their parents.
- Tom spoke \_\_\_\_\_ because he was so excited.



8. Nora married a German and is going to live \_\_\_\_\_ in Germany.
9. Carol \_\_\_\_\_ her belt because it was too tight.
10. The plane got in an hour ago, but Mohammed didn't come through the gate. \_\_\_\_\_, he wasn't on it.

## **k** Guided Writing

*Write one of these two short compositions. Paraphrase the information as much as possible.*

1. When and why do we dream?
2. If a person has trouble sleeping, what can he or she do about it?



lesson

3

# Health Care and Epidemics



## Before You Read

1. When you are sick, do you take medicine? Why?
2. How can people prevent disease?
3. Have you ever been in a place that was having an epidemic? What did the people do about it?



## Context Clues

The words in **bold print** are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

1. Some diseases are caused by **viruses**. Viruses are even smaller than bacteria, and they cause different kinds of diseases.
2. People can be **cruel** to victims of disease. Sometimes they take away their jobs, throw them out of their apartments, and refuse them transportation.
3. Some diseases spread when people touch the same dishes, towels, and furniture. You can even **pick up** a disease when you touch things in public buildings.
4. One disease that causes frequent, worldwide epidemics is **influenza**, or flu for short. The symptoms of influenza include a headache and sometimes a runny nose.
5. About half of all flu patients have a high body temperature, called a **fever**.

# 3 Health Care and Epidemics



Everyone suffers from disease at some time or another. However, millions of people around the world do not have good health care. Sometimes they have no money to pay for medical treatment. Sometimes they

5 have money, but there is no doctor. Sometimes the doctor does not know how to treat the disease, and sometimes there is no treatment. Some people are afraid of doctors. When these conditions are present in large population centers, **epidemics** can start.

- 10 Epidemics can change history. Exploration and wars cause different groups of people to come into contact with





each other. They carry strange diseases to each other. For example, when the Europeans first came to North and South America, they brought diseases with them that  
15 killed about 95% of the Native American population.

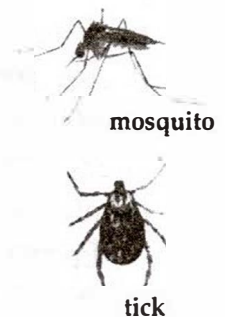
People have all kinds of ideas about how to prevent and treat diseases. Some people think that if you eat lots of onions or garlic, you won't get sick. Others say that you should take huge amounts of vitamins. Scientific  
20 experiments have not proved most of these theories. However, people still spend millions of dollars on vitamins and other probably useless treatments or preventatives. Some people want **antibiotics** whenever they get sick. Some antibiotics are very expensive. Much  
25 of this money is wasted because some diseases are caused by **viruses**. Viruses are even smaller than bacteria, and they cause different kinds of diseases. Antibiotics are useless against viruses.

People are afraid of many diseases. Because of their  
30 fear, people can be **cruel** to victims of disease. Sometimes they **fire** victims from their jobs, throw them out of their apartments, and refuse them transportation **services**. In the epidemics of **plague** a few hundred years ago, people simply covered the doors and windows of the victims'  
35 houses and left them inside to die, all in an **effort** to protect themselves from getting sick.

Doctors know how most epidemic diseases spread. Some, like **tuberculosis**, are spread when people **sneeze** and **cough**. The explosive cough or sneeze sends the  
40 bacteria shooting out into the air. Then they enter the mouth or nose of anyone nearby.

Others are spread through human contact. When you are sick and blow your nose, you get viruses or bacteria on your hands. Then you touch another  
45 person's hand, and when that person touches his or her mouth, nose, or eyes, the disease enters the body. Some diseases spread when people touch the same dishes, towels, and furniture. You can even **pick up** a disease when you touch things in public buildings. Other  
50 diseases are spread through insects, such as flies, **mosquitoes**, and **ticks**.

a very serious disease carried by insects



One disease that causes frequent, worldwide epidemics is **influenza**, or flu for short. The symptoms of influenza include a headache and sometimes a runny  
55 nose. Some victims get sick to their stomach. These symptoms are similar to the symptoms of other, milder diseases. About half of all flu patients also have a high body temperature, called a **fever**. Influenza can be a very serious disease, especially for **pregnant** women, people  
60 over 65, and people already suffering from another disease such as a heart problem. Flu is very contagious. One person catches the flu from another person; it doesn't begin inside the body as heart disease does.



Sometimes medicine can relieve the symptoms of a  
65 disease. That is, it can make people cough less, make headaches less intense, and stop noses from running for a while. However, medicine can't always cure a disease. So far, there is no cure for many diseases and no medicine to prevent them. People have to try to  
70 prevent them in other ways.

Some diseases can be prevented by **vaccination**. A liquid vaccine is **injected** into the arm or taken by mouth, and the person is then safe from catching that disease. Other diseases can be prevented by good health habits,  
75 such as drinking only clean water, **boiling** water that might carry disease, and washing the hands often.

Epidemics usually start in areas of large population. Poor people in big cities who live crowded together in **miserable** conditions have the most health problems.  
80 They often have the least education about disease prevention. If they know what to do, they often do not have the money to do it. For example, it is difficult for a person who has no electricity to refrigerate food or boil drinking water. With no money, the person can't even  
85 buy soap to wash his or her hands.

very bad; inferior

Disease prevention costs much less than disease treatment. It seems completely illogical, but some countries like the United States spend much more health-care money on treatment for diseases than on programs  
90 to prevent disease in the first place. Most doctors and other hospital workers stay in their **institutions**. Only a



few doctors go out into the streets of the poor areas to educate people. Only a few doctors and some nurses vaccinate people and **supervise** them to make sure they  
95 take their medicine. Many people who help poor people with their health problems are volunteers.

How can you use all this information for your own good health? When someone you know becomes ill, try to avoid physical contact with that person. If you get  
100 sick yourself, keep your towel and dishes separate from everyone else's. Try not to touch things that belong to others. Don't touch other people, and don't shake hands. Explain why, however; you don't want people to think you are impolite. Wash your hands often if you  
105 are ill or if anyone around you is ill.

Researchers continue searching for a way to cure or prevent epidemic diseases. **Meanwhile**, it is worth the money for governments to provide preventive health care for all of their people. Preventing epidemics is  
110 much cheaper than stopping them.

## a Vocabulary

cough	epidemics	cruel	institutions
meanwhile	picked up	sneeze	miserable
plague	antibiotics	vaccinations	influenza

1. \_\_\_\_\_ is also called flu.
2. Some diseases are spread when people \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
3. When you have a headache, you probably feel \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Babies should receive \_\_\_\_\_ to prevent common childhood diseases. Then they won't catch these diseases.
5. Governments should provide health care. \_\_\_\_\_, they should give money for new research into the causes of disease.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ kill thousands, even millions, of people worldwide.



7. Hospitals and universities are examples of \_\_\_\_\_.
8. It is very \_\_\_\_\_ to put a sick person out of his or her house into the street to live.
9. The \_\_\_\_\_ epidemics killed half the population.
10. If you take \_\_\_\_\_ too often, they will become ineffective.
11. She thinks she \_\_\_\_\_ the flu on the long flight to Europe.

## **b** Vocabulary

fever	service	tuberculosis	supervise
fire	effort	viruses	injected
pregnant	boil	mosquitoes	ticks

1. When your temperature is above normal, you have a \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Your boss can't \_\_\_\_\_ you without a good reason.
3. Ms. Davis is \_\_\_\_\_. She is going to have a baby in May.
4. The train \_\_\_\_\_ in my area is very good. There's a train every fifteen minutes.
5. Diseases caused by \_\_\_\_\_ cannot be cured with antibiotics.
6. Some vaccines are \_\_\_\_\_ into the arm; others are taken by mouth.
7. She didn't make any \_\_\_\_\_ to get a good grade. She didn't study or even come to class. No wonder she failed.
8. If you \_\_\_\_\_ an egg for ten minutes, it will become hard.
9. There were only two adults to \_\_\_\_\_ thirty children on the trip.
10. Diseases carried by \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ enter the victim's blood through the bites of these insects.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ enters the body when the victim breathes the air coughed out by a sick person.





## C Vocabulary Review

raw materials	attacked	dawn	tide
hammer	intensely	apparent	pounded
swell	arteries	forehead	recurring

1. Blood is carried from the heart through the \_\_\_\_\_.
2. If you hit your thumb with a \_\_\_\_\_, the thumb will probably \_\_\_\_\_ up.
3. Sometimes the sky is red at \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Tom got hit on the \_\_\_\_\_ with the ball.
5. The army \_\_\_\_\_ at dawn to surprise the enemy.
6. Rita has a \_\_\_\_\_ pain in the stomach. It comes and goes.
7. The waves move higher up on the beach as the \_\_\_\_\_ comes in.
8. Iron and cotton are \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Dan \_\_\_\_\_ on the table to get everyone's attention.
10. Everyone in the room was studying the picture \_\_\_\_\_ when the door opened. No one even noticed that someone came in.
11. It's \_\_\_\_\_ to me that you didn't read the article. You don't even know what it's about.



## **d** Multiple Choice

1. Coughing is a \_\_\_\_\_ of tuberculosis.
  - a. miserable
  - b. epidemic
  - c. symptom
2. Medicine can \_\_\_\_\_ a disease.
  - a. cure
  - b. relieve the symptoms of
  - c. prevent
3. Without the Europeans, North and South America would probably have \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. more Native Americans
  - b. no diseases
  - c. no wars
4. Which one of these sentences is *not* true?
  - a. Antibiotics can be expensive.
  - b. Antibiotics have saved the lives of many sick people.
  - c. Antibiotics will help cure diseases caused by viruses.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ prevent some diseases.
  - a. There is no vaccine to
  - b. You can have a vaccine injected into your arm to
  - c. both a and b
6. Tuberculosis spreads \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. by hand contact
  - b. when people cough and sneeze
  - c. when people don't eat garlic
7. The best way to avoid epidemics is to \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. lock sick people up inside their houses
  - b. take lots of vitamins
  - c. provide health care for people in crowded cities



## Comprehension Questions

1. Name the symptoms of influenza.
2. What does medicine do for diseases?
3. Is it worth the expense to take extra vitamins?
4. How do epidemics spread?
5. How can epidemics change history?
6. Do you think you should or should not shake hands with someone who is ill? Why?
7. Why do poor people in big cities have the most health problems?
8. Why do people who live in the city have more health problems than people who live in the country (outside of cities)?
9. How can humans prevent diseases from becoming epidemics?

## Main Idea

*What is the main idea of each of these paragraphs?*

1. Paragraph 2 (lines 10–15)
2. Paragraph 4 (lines 29–36)
3. Paragraph 6 (lines 42–51)
4. Paragraph 9 (lines 71–76)

## Cause and Effect

*Write the effect for each of these causes.*

Cause	Effect
1. A virus enters the body.	
2. People take medicine.	
3. A person with tuberculosis coughs.	
4. A vaccine is injected into the body.	
5. A student drinks from a sick roommate's glass.	



## **b** Word Forms

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.		(im)politeness	(im)polite	(im)politely
2.		cruelty	cruel	cruelly
3.	relieve	relief	relieved	
4.	volunteer	volunteer	(in)voluntary	(in)voluntarily
5.	inject	injection		
6.		pregnancy	pregnant	
7.		contagion	contagious	contagiously
8.	lengthen	length	long	
9.	reason	reason	(un)reasonable	(un)reasonably

- The idea of \_\_\_\_\_ is different from one country to another.
- It is \_\_\_\_\_ to hit a very old or sick person.
- Mary felt \_\_\_\_\_ when she found out her daughter had arrived safely at her grandparents' home.
- Mark did not go into the army \_\_\_\_\_. He went because it is the law that all young men must serve in the army.
- Children don't like to have \_\_\_\_\_.
- A human \_\_\_\_\_ lasts nine months.
- Heart trouble is not \_\_\_\_\_.
- In the spring, the days start to \_\_\_\_\_.
- Mehdi was very angry. We tried to \_\_\_\_\_ with him, but he was completely \_\_\_\_\_ and wouldn't listen at all.





## Two-Word Verbs

Learn these two-word verbs and then fill in the blanks with the right words.  
Use the correct verb form.

grow out of = stop doing or feeling (something) as one becomes older  
get out of = avoid doing  
show up = appear; arrive  
put off = delay  
read up on = get facts and information on (a subject) by reading

1. Hiroko always tries to \_\_\_\_\_ talking in front of the class because she doesn't like to do it.
2. Tom had planned to go to the shopping center today, but he \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ until the weekend because he's so busy.
3. Children \_\_\_\_\_ sleepwalking when they become adolescents.
4. Marge is going to \_\_\_\_\_ photovoltaic cells because she wants to know more about them.
5. Bob didn't \_\_\_\_\_ for the party until almost midnight.

## j Articles

Put articles in the blanks if they are needed.

1. Millions of \_\_\_\_\_ people around \_\_\_\_\_ world do not have \_\_\_\_\_ good health care.
2. Sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ doctor does not know how to treat \_\_\_\_\_ disease, and sometimes there is no \_\_\_\_\_ treatment.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ people have all kinds of \_\_\_\_\_ ideas about how to prevent and treat \_\_\_\_\_ diseases.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ explosive cough or sneeze sends \_\_\_\_\_ bacteria shooting out into \_\_\_\_\_ air.
5. Then they enter \_\_\_\_\_ mouth or nose of \_\_\_\_\_ anyone nearby.
6. Some diseases spread when \_\_\_\_\_ people touch \_\_\_\_\_ same \_\_\_\_\_ dishes, \_\_\_\_\_ towels, and \_\_\_\_\_ furniture.



7. Some countries like \_\_\_\_\_ United States spend much more health-care money on \_\_\_\_\_ treatment for diseases than on programs to prevent \_\_\_\_\_ disease in \_\_\_\_\_ first place.



## Summarizing

Summarize paragraph 3, lines 16–28. Use your own words to tell the main idea in no more than three or four sentences.



## Guided Writing

*Write one of these two short compositions.*

1. You are a health-care worker who is going into a poor area of a big city. You have seen several cases of tuberculosis and influenza this month. You are going to try to prevent an epidemic among the people in this area. What will you say to the people?
2. A government official in your country has asked you for your suggestions about improving health care. What will you say to the official?



# Medicine: From Leeches to Lasers



## Before You Read

1. Based on the title of this lesson, what do you think the reading is about?
2. What do you think this doctor is holding up?
3. What are some examples of traditional and modern medicine?



## Context Clues

The words in bold print are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

1. A man named Hippocrates **concluded** that people became sick for natural reasons, not because the gods were angry. He also believed that there was a connection between diet and health.
2. During the time of Hippocrates, doctors **prescribed** massage, special diets, and baths as medical treatments for their patients.
3. In the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, many **remarkable** discoveries were made in medicine. These discoveries saved the lives of millions of people around the world.
4. Hospitals now have large computers and machines that help doctors **diagnose** medical problems.

# 4 Medicine: From Leeches to Lasers



What do lasers, leeches, tree bark, and old bread have in common? They are all things that people use to make medicine or to help sick people feel better. Throughout history, people have searched for ways to live healthier and better lives. As early as 8000 B.C., people were experimenting with methods of helping sick people. Today, we have very modern technology, yet we continue to look for ways to **improve** medicine and our system of health care.

a type of worm that sucks, or takes in, blood

10 The history of medicine extends back thousands of years. We know that, from the earliest times, people used plants as medicine. Scientists have also found **evidence** that people experimented with surgery 10,000 years ago.

opening up the body to fix it

15 People haven't always gone to doctors to get medical help. In Egypt around 3000 B.C., people went to their





priests when they felt sick. That was because many Egyptians believed that the gods made people sick when they were angry with them. Common remedies in Egypt at this time included garlic and  
20 onions to prevent epidemics and **moldy** bread to heal wounds. Around this time, however, people in Egypt were also learning more about **sanitation**. Archaeologists there have found the ruins of **elaborate** bathrooms and **sewerage** systems.

having a fungus

ways to keep things clean and germ-free

for the removal of waste

25 In Greece in 410 B.C., a man named Hippocrates **concluded** that people became sick for natural reasons, not because the gods were angry. He also believed that there was a connection between diet and health.

During his time, doctors **prescribed** massage, special  
30 diets, and baths as medical treatments for their patients.

In China and other Asian countries, doctors developed acupuncture as a method of treating sickness and pain. Acupuncture uses **needles** to help the human body fight pain and disease. Doctors have used this method for  
35 thousands of years, and many still use it today.

During the Middle Ages (400–1500 A.D.), a few medical schools and hospitals opened in Europe. At this time, however, doctors considered themselves to be primarily observers of patients. For them, surgery was a  
40 **menial** task, something a barber should do. One common medical treatment during the Middle Ages was the use of leeches to remove “bad blood” from people. Doctors thought this “bloodletting” was good for many illnesses. Unfortunately, many plagues spread through  
45 Europe at that time. Doctors could not cure these diseases, and one quarter of the population of Europe died. It didn’t help that, in the Middle Ages, many people believed that bathing could be **fatal**. It wasn’t uncommon for people to bathe just once a year!

low-skill

deadly; causing death

50 After the invention of the printing press in the mid-fifteenth century, books on health and medicine became available. Leonardo da Vinci’s **drawings** of the human body, including all the muscles, helped doctors tremendously. Understanding the human body helped  
55 doctors treat sicknesses and make people feel better.



In the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, many **remarkable** discoveries were made in medicine. These discoveries saved the lives of millions of people around the world. For example, in 1895, a German doctor named  
60 Roentgen developed the X-ray machine. In 1928, the English scientist Sir Alexander Fleming discovered penicillin, the first antibiotic. Fleming discovered penicillin growing in mold on an old piece of bread!

Great advances in the technology of medicine  
65 continue to be made. Today, doctors can save people's lives by giving them a new heart or a new **kidney**. Hospitals now have large computers and machines that help doctors **diagnose** medical problems.

Although modern medicine is making many new  
70 treatments possible, doctors are learning that some of the old ways are useful too. For example, doctors are now paying more attention to the connection between diet and health. Even the leech has found a place in modern medicine. In certain kinds of surgery, up-to-  
75 date surgeons are using leeches to prevent a patient's arteries from getting plugged up.

Some people believe that nature has all of the cures for human problems. Others believe that technology is more helpful. It just might be that, together, tradition  
80 and technology will help people everywhere live better and healthier lives.



**a** Vocabulary

improve	evidence	surgery	sanitation
leech	elaborate	sewerage	concluded
needle	menial	fatal	drawing

1. They have an \_\_\_\_\_ garden behind their house. They must work on it for hours every day.
2. After carefully studying the X-ray of his arm, the doctors \_\_\_\_\_ that it wasn't broken.
3. The doctors gave the patient something to make him sleep during \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ Department in our city has to inspect all restaurants to make sure that they are clean.
5. During the bad storm, all the \_\_\_\_\_ from the city went right into the river.
6. A doctor uses a \_\_\_\_\_ when she gives you an injection.
7. When he walked out of the lake, there was a \_\_\_\_\_ on his leg.
8. I don't mind doing \_\_\_\_\_ jobs, because I can think about other things at the same time.
9. He said that his neighbor stole his boat, but he didn't have any \_\_\_\_\_ to prove it.
10. You will probably feel better if you \_\_\_\_\_ your diet.





## Vocabulary

moldy	kidneys	diagnose	fatal
draw	unsanitary	evident	improvement
conclusion	needle	surgeon	

1. If you leave the bread out for too long, it will get \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The doctors needed several X-rays before they could \_\_\_\_\_ his problem.
3. Luckily everyone in the car was wearing a seatbelt. Otherwise, it might have been a \_\_\_\_\_ accident.
4. I can't understand your directions. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ me a map?
5. Most people have two \_\_\_\_\_ located in their lower back.
6. It's \_\_\_\_\_ to handle food without first washing your hands.
7. At the \_\_\_\_\_ of the movie, everyone died.
8. The patient made great \_\_\_\_\_ in the week after surgery.



## Vocabulary Review: Synonyms

Match the words that mean the same.

- |                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| _____ 1. analyze      | a. a lot            |
| _____ 2. miserable    | b. blur             |
| _____ 3. blank        | c. teenager         |
| _____ 4. a great deal | d. study            |
| _____ 5. meanwhile    | e. vision           |
| _____ 6. nightmare    | f. forever          |
| _____ 7. confused     | g. at the same time |
| _____ 8. adolescent   | h. location         |
| _____ 9. permanently  | i. painful          |
| _____ 10. sore        | j. unhappy          |
| _____ 11. dawn        | k. empty            |
| _____ 12. position    | l. sunrise          |
|                       | m. mixed up         |
|                       | n. bad dream        |





## **d** True/False/No Information

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. Surgery is a very recent type of medical treatment.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. Doctors were very busy in ancient Egypt.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. People weren't interested in cleanliness until the nineteenth century.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. Leeches have always been used to help patients.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Acupuncture was not popular in Europe during the Middle Ages.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Leonardo da Vinci was a medical doctor.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. The X-ray machine was developed before the discovery of penicillin.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. An X-ray machine can help doctors diagnose a broken bone.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. There is no good reason for doctors to study cures and treatments of the past.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. The first antibiotic was found growing on bread.

## **e** Comprehension Questions

1. When did doctors first do surgery?
2. Why did Egyptians go to their priests for medical help instead of to their doctors?
3. What was medical care like in ancient Egypt?
4. Compare the medical care in Egypt in 3000 B.C. and in Greece in 410 B.C.
5. What is acupuncture?
6. What was unusual about a doctor's work in the Middle Ages in Europe?
7. What effect did the invention of the printing press have on medical care?
8. What do you think is one of the most remarkable discoveries in medicine? Why?

## **f** Main Idea

*What is the main idea of each of these paragraphs?*

1. Paragraph 2 (lines 10–13)
2. Paragraph 5 (lines 31–35)
3. Paragraph 7 (lines 50–55)





## Prepositions

*Put the right preposition in each blank.*

1. What do lasers, leeches, tree bark, and old bread have \_\_\_\_\_ common?
2. Throughout history, people have searched \_\_\_\_\_ ways to live healthier and better lives.
3. In China and other Asian countries, doctors developed acupuncture \_\_\_\_\_ a method \_\_\_\_\_ treating sickness and pain.
4. Doctors have used this method \_\_\_\_\_ thousands of years.
5. After the invention \_\_\_\_\_ the printing press \_\_\_\_\_ the mid-fifteenth century, books \_\_\_\_\_ health and medicine became available.
6. Great advances \_\_\_\_\_ the technology \_\_\_\_\_ medicine continue to be made.
7. Today, doctors can save people's lives \_\_\_\_\_ giving them a new heart.



## Compound Words and Two-Word Verbs

*Make a compound word by joining a word from the first column with one from the second column. More than one answer is correct for several of the words. Some of these compounds are also written separately as two-word verbs.*

- |       |          |          |
|-------|----------|----------|
| _____ | 1. break | a. in    |
| _____ | 2. stand | b. down  |
| _____ | 3. work  | c. work  |
| _____ | 4. check | d. mate  |
| _____ | 5. sun   | e. rise  |
| _____ | 6. home  | f. night |
| _____ | 7. sleep | g. by    |
| _____ | 8. out   | h. grow  |
| _____ | 9. life  | i. walk  |
| _____ | 10. over | j. way   |
| _____ | 11. air  | k. time  |
| _____ | 12. room | l. out   |



## i

## Word Forms

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.	improve	improvement		
2.		evidence	evident	evidently
3.		sanitation	(un)sanitary	(un)sanitarily
4.	elaborate	elaboration	elaborate	elaborately
5.		similarity	(dis)similar	(dis)similarly
6.	prescribe	prescription		
7.	medicate	medicine	medical	medically
8.		fatality	fatal	fatally
9.	diagnose	diagnosis	diagnostic	diagnostically

- There has been a tremendous \_\_\_\_\_ in surgical methods over the past century.
- The newspaper gave a great description of the event. \_\_\_\_\_, someone from the newspaper saw the whole thing.
- Everything in the operating room must be \_\_\_\_\_.
- I don't understand your explanation. Could you please \_\_\_\_\_?
- What is the \_\_\_\_\_ between snow and hail?
- What did the doctor \_\_\_\_\_ for your headache? Did he give you a \_\_\_\_\_?
- Jane wants to go to \_\_\_\_\_ college and become a doctor.
- There were two \_\_\_\_\_ in yesterday's car accident on Route 34.
- She went to three different doctors to get a \_\_\_\_\_.





## Summarizing

Write a summary of the text for this lesson. Write only the most important information, using three to five sentences.



## Guided Writing

Write one of these two short compositions.

1. What would you like and not like about being a doctor during the Middle Ages in Europe?
2. Do you think it's important to study the history of medicine? Why or why not?





lesson  
**5**

# Cholesterol and Heart Disease



## Before You Read

1. Do you have a healthy diet? Why do you think so?
2. What effect can exercise have on heart disease?
3. Is it difficult or easy to change your lifestyle? Why?



## Context Clues

The words in **bold print** are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess the meaning of each word.

1. Some people say that heart disease is not really a serious problem. They think the danger of heart disease is **exaggerated**.
2. A natural substance in the blood, **cholesterol** comes from the liver.
3. **Angiograms** are X-rays of the heart arteries.
4. People often **complain** about low-fat diets. They say that the food doesn't taste good.
5. Doctors can use a special camera to watch a person's blood **circulating** through the arteries.

# 5 Cholesterol and Heart Disease



Do you know your **cholesterol** level? A high level of cholesterol in the blood is an important **risk factor** for heart disease, so it's a good idea to know your cholesterol level.

- 5 Some people say that the danger of heart disease is **exaggerated**. However, heart disease is a main cause of death in developed countries. Every year, more than 1 million Americans have heart attacks, and half of them die. People with heart disease suffer chest pains
- 10 that make simple activities, such as walking, shaving, or taking a shower, difficult.

said to be more than it is

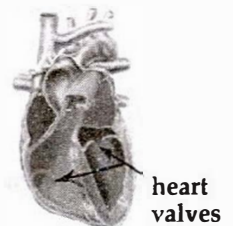
- Research has proven that cholesterol levels are connected with heart disease. One project in Massachusetts has studied the same group of fifteen
- 15 men and women since 1948. The researchers have found



that the people who have high levels of cholesterol have more heart attacks.

A natural **substance** in the blood, cholesterol comes from the liver. The amount of cholesterol is affected  
20 by diet and by physical qualities people **inherit** from their parents. One kind of cholesterol sticks fat to the walls of arteries, making the arteries smaller and finally blocking them. It produces a condition called  
25 "hardening of the arteries," which causes heart attacks. With tiny cameras, doctors can see blood **circulating** through the heart **valves**. **Angiograms** are X-rays of the heart arteries. They show fat **deposits** and blockages caused by high cholesterol.

get



Heart disease begins in children as young as 3 years  
30 old. It occurs earlier in boys than in girls. Nearly half of teenagers have some fat deposits on their artery walls. Heart disease develops faster if you have a high cholesterol level and you also smoke.

What is a safe level of cholesterol? Adults have a  
35 high risk of heart attack if their cholesterol level is above 240 milligrams per deciliter of blood. Below 200 is better. In the Massachusetts study, no one with a cholesterol level below 150 has ever had a heart attack. However, about half of American adults have  
40 cholesterol levels above 200.

To lower your cholesterol level, you must change your eating habits. Anything that comes from an animal is high in fat and high in cholesterol. The American Heart Association National Cholesterol Education  
45 Program says that fat should be no more than 30% of your diet. Blood cholesterol levels start to fall after two to three weeks of following a low-cholesterol, low-fat diet. Dietary changes alone can result in a 10% **reduction** of the average person's cholesterol level.  
50 **Aerobic** exercise helps, too. Artery blockage can be reduced by as much as 40% through changes in diet and amount of exercise.

decrease

increasing oxygen intake (for example, walking, running, and swimming are aerobic exercise)

We should educate everyone, including children in elementary schools, about the danger of cholesterol. We  
55 should teach them responsibility for their health





through classes in nutrition and aerobic exercise. For example, the smart **snack** is fruit. Children should be served fruit in the school cafeteria, along with low-fat meals. Schools should send **recipes** home with children.

60 Parents should include children in planning and preparing meals and shopping for food.

Adults, including people over the age of 65, can lower their cholesterol by 30 or 40%. It is never too late to change. One man began his health program when he was 73. By the time he was 77, he had lowered his arterial blockage from 50% to 13% and his cholesterol from 320 to 145 without drugs. He went on a vegetarian diet with only 10% fat and followed programs to reduce stress and get more exercise.

70 A low-cholesterol diet that cuts out most animal products and high-fat vegetables may be **unfamiliar** to people. The Heart Association says to use no added fat of any kind. Don't fry food in oil. Cook it in water, vinegar, or vegetable water. Learn about grains and vegetables. Avoid egg yolks (the yellow part of the egg). Eat potatoes, beans, low-fat vegetables, and fruit. People often **complain** about low-fat diets before they have had time to get used to them. Food can taste good without cream, butter, and salt. You can use olive oil, mustard, fresh **herbs**, or yogurt instead.

80 A new diet can cause general **anxiety**, when people feel worried and nervous about what is going to happen. They must learn to **deal with** the changes in their lives. Sometimes major changes in diet or lifestyle are easier than minor ones because the results are bigger and occur faster. Fast results **encourage** us.

How can you control the amount of fat in your diet if you eat in restaurants? Restaurants should provide healthy meals that are low in fat, salt, and cholesterol. A diet is a **personal** thing. Restaurant owners should not make customers feel embarrassed because they want to follow a diet that is good for them. Restaurant owners must learn to give equal service to customers on a healthy diet. Some restaurants have items on the menu marked with a heart to show that they are low in fat,

something small  
that can be eaten  
fast

instructions for  
cooking

strange; unknown

say they don't like

cope with

private; about  
oneself





cholesterol, salt, and/or sugar. A few restaurants serve only these items.

Education programs, such as the American Heart Association National Cholesterol Education Program, cost money but can bring results. In 1983, only 35% of the American public knew their cholesterol levels. By 2000, 60% of the people had had theirs checked.

People feel better if they lower their cholesterol through diet. Healthy people are more **confident**. They are more **attractive** to themselves, as well as to others. Their friends **stare** at them because they look so healthy.

pretty; handsome  
look intensely

We can prevent heart disease by living a healthful lifestyle and eating the right kind of diet. If people don't do this, two out of three men and women in the United States will eventually get heart disease.



## Vocabulary

confidence	anxiety	stare	herbs
aerobic	risk	encouraged	valve
unfamiliar	inherited	personal	snack

1. John's parents \_\_\_\_\_ him to stay in school, even though his grades were not very good.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ exercise is good for the heart.
3. Is it impolite to ask someone \_\_\_\_\_ questions?
4. Students often suffer from \_\_\_\_\_ before an exam.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ improve the taste of food.
6. Some people are \_\_\_\_\_ with a low-fat diet.
7. Mark \_\_\_\_\_ red hair from his mother.
8. It is impolite to \_\_\_\_\_ at people.
9. If you drive carelessly, you take a \_\_\_\_\_.
10. I'm hungry now, but it's two hours until dinner. I think I'll have a \_\_\_\_\_.



11. Open the \_\_\_\_\_ so that the water will flow freely through the pipes.
12. If you are sure of yourself, you have \_\_\_\_\_ in yourself.

## **b** Vocabulary

factor	circulated	deal with	complains
attractive	reduction	deposit	angiogram
exaggerated	cholesterol	recipe	substance

1. Many television stars are \_\_\_\_\_.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ occurs naturally in the blood.
3. A \_\_\_\_\_ in how much fat you eat might make you healthier.
4. Please give me a copy of the \_\_\_\_\_ for that delicious soup.
5. Please \_\_\_\_\_ your books in the box at the back of the room.
6. It is difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ a child who doesn't behave well.
7. Smoking is a \_\_\_\_\_ in many diseases of the heart and lungs.
8. Tom said that he earned \$1,000 a week, but he is really paid only \$800. He \_\_\_\_\_.
9. The doctor wants my mother to have an \_\_\_\_\_ to see if her arteries are blocked.
10. Ali always \_\_\_\_\_ that he has too much homework.
11. There's a strange \_\_\_\_\_ on the table. It looks like water, but it isn't.
12. While the students were reading, the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ around the room to ask them questions.



## **C** Vocabulary Review: Definitions

Match the words with the definitions.

- |                       |  |
|-----------------------|--|
| _____ 1. tremendously | a. length of time                      |
| _____ 2. period       | b. at the same time                    |
| _____ 3. habit        | c. stage                               |
| _____ 4. meanwhile    | d. germ free                           |
| _____ 5. fever        | e. grind                               |
| _____ 6. pregnant     | f. something that supports a statement |
| _____ 7. elaborate    | g. watch                               |
| _____ 8. evidence     | h. very detailed                       |
| _____ 9. sanitary     | i. anxious                             |
| _____ 10. solar       | j. usual action                        |
| _____ 11. observe     | k. high body temperature               |
|                       | l. of the sun                          |
|                       | m. very much                           |
|                       | n. going to become a mother            |

## **d** True/False/Not Enough Information

- \_\_\_\_\_ 1. About 500,000 Americans die each year from heart disease.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 2. More than twice as many people had their blood cholesterol levels checked in 2000 as in 1983.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 3. Smoking can be a risk factor for heart disease.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 4. No direct relationship has been proven between high cholesterol levels and heart attacks.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 5. Girls have no risk of heart disease.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 6. Low-fat diets always taste bad.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 7. Children should learn more responsibility for eating healthful food.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 8. People usually feel good about going on a new diet.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 9. It can be easier to change our diet a lot than to change it a little.
- \_\_\_\_\_ 10. Old people shouldn't bother to change their eating habits because it's too late for it to do them any good.





## Comprehension Questions

1. What are some symptoms of heart disease?
2. What is hardening of the arteries? How is it connected with high cholesterol?
3. Why are angiograms useful?
4. At what age does heart disease start?
5. What level of cholesterol is believed to be safe?
6. How long does it take for cholesterol levels to start to drop?
7. How can parents help teach children healthy eating habits?
8. What are some ways to reduce fat in your diet?



## Main Idea

*What is the main idea of each of these paragraphs?*

1. Paragraph 4 (lines 18–28)
2. Paragraph 6 (lines 34–40)
3. Paragraph 9 (lines 62–69)







## Word Forms

Choose a word form from the chart for each sentence below. Use the right verb forms and singular or plural nouns.

	Verb	Noun	Adjective	Adverb
1.		anxiety	anxious	anxiously
2.	encourage	encouragement	encouraged	encouragingly
3.	discourage	discouragement	discouraged	discouragingly
4.		stress	stressful	stressfully
5.	personalize	person	personal	personally
6.		stupidity	stupid	stupidly
7.	attract	attraction	(un)attractive	(un)attractively
8.	inherit	inheritance	inherited	
9.	familiarize	familiarity	(un)familiar	familiarly
10.	suggest	suggestion	suggested	
11.	complain	complaint		complainingly
12.	exaggerate	exaggeration	exaggerated	exaggeratedly
13.	serve	service		

- The students waited \_\_\_\_\_ to hear the results of the test.
- Marie was \_\_\_\_\_ by the results of her physical exam after a long illness.
- Michael felt \_\_\_\_\_ when he wasn't accepted at the university that was his first choice.
- Joan felt a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ when she stood before the class and began her speech.
- \_\_\_\_\_, I don't mind if people use their cell phones on the train.
- Marie felt \_\_\_\_\_ because she did the exercise without reading the directions and did it all wrong.



7. Honey \_\_\_\_\_ flies. Ants also are \_\_\_\_\_ by honey.
8. Tom \_\_\_\_\_ a small business and some money from his father when his father died. His friend received a large \_\_\_\_\_ from his favorite uncle.
9. If you \_\_\_\_\_ yourself with the language center before the first day of classes, you will not get confused about where you should go.
10. I \_\_\_\_\_ that we take an exercise class this month. That's a good \_\_\_\_\_.
11. If you have any \_\_\_\_\_ about the television set you bought, take it back to the store.
12. To say that you couldn't get to sleep at all last night is an \_\_\_\_\_. You are \_\_\_\_\_.
13. A waiter \_\_\_\_\_ food in a restaurant.

## **h** Irregular Verbs

*Learn these verbs. Then put the right verb forms in the blanks in the sentences below. Use the first verb in the first sentence, and so on.*

<b>Simple</b>	<b>Past</b>	<b>Past Participle</b>
1. tear	tore	torn
2. light	lit or lighted	lit or lighted
3. lie	lay	lain
4. swell	swelled	swollen
5. grind	ground	ground
6. draw	drew	drawn
7. stick	stuck	stuck
8. deal	dealt	dealt

1. Alice \_\_\_\_\_ her new blouse.
2. Dan \_\_\_\_\_ a fire in the living room fireplace.
3. In some countries, it is the custom to \_\_\_\_\_ down for a rest in the middle of the day.



4. Ms. Baxter's hand is \_\_\_\_\_ because she shut it in the car door.
5. Mr. Thomas \_\_\_\_\_ some fresh coffee beans and made coffee.
6. The children \_\_\_\_\_ a picture of a big animal on the wall outside their school.
7. The roadrunner \_\_\_\_\_ out its head when it runs.
8. Mr. Nevins is a car dealer. He \_\_\_\_\_ in new and used cars.

## Two-Word Verbs: Review

1. Sixteen people showed \_\_\_\_\_ for volleyball practice.
2. Never put \_\_\_\_\_ until tomorrow what you can do today.
3. What time does your plane get \_\_\_\_\_?
4. Were you brought \_\_\_\_\_ in the city or in the country?
5. When he wrote the class list, the teacher left \_\_\_\_\_ one student.
6. Do you dress \_\_\_\_\_ for dinner at an expensive restaurant?
7. Look \_\_\_\_\_! There's a hole in the sidewalk.
8. I have to read \_\_\_\_\_ a subject for my speech.
9. Kim had \_\_\_\_\_ a warm jacket so I knew it was cold outside.
10. The Bakers have to buy new shoes for their daughter. She grew \_\_\_\_\_ her old ones.
11. We tried to get \_\_\_\_\_ helping our cousin, but we had to do it.

## Context Clues

*Each of the words in **bold** has more than one meaning. Circle the letter of the best meaning of the word as it is used in the sentence.*

1. Mr. Becker has worked in the **field** of computer science for ten years.
  - a. area of specialization
  - b. place where animals or plants are raised
  - c. place where baseball is played



2. Carolyn is often late for class because she has to walk **so far** from her apartment.
  - a. until now
  - b. such a long distance
  - c. far enough
3. There are 2.2 **pounds** in a kilo.
  - a. unit of English money
  - b. hits or strikes
  - c. unit of weight
4. Trappers sometimes **cure** the skins of the animals they catch before they sell the skins.
  - a. dry and prepare for use
  - b. make better
  - c. a kind of medicine
5. The **current** value of gold is \$321 an ounce.
  - a. movement of electricity
  - b. at this time
  - c. movement of a stream of water in the ocean
6. I know that it isn't **so**.
  - a. very
  - b. therefore
  - c. true
7. Ali and Muhammed live in a large apartment **complex** near the university.
  - a. related group of buildings
  - b. complicated
  - c. anxiety

## **k** Summarizing

Write a summary of the text for this lesson. Write only the important information, using three to five sentences.





**I****Guided Writing**

*Write one of these two short compositions.*

1. You are going to start an educational program about heart disease in your area. How will you do this?
2. Your doctor told you that you have to lower your cholesterol. Give a detailed plan of how you will follow the doctor's suggestion.



# Video Highlights

## Before You Watch

1. Discuss the questions below with your classmates.
  - a. Do you enjoy going to the doctor? Why or why not?
  - b. The word *cardio-* is a medical word for *heart*. What kind of doctor is a cardiologist?
  - c. Have you seen the picture on the right before? What does it mean?
2. The video you are going to watch is about a man who has two jobs. Dr. Cleve Francis is a doctor and a country music performer. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of both jobs. Then complete the chart below. List as many advantages and disadvantages as you can.



	Advantages	Disadvantages
<b>Doctor</b>	1. <i>good salary</i> 2. 3.	1. <i>long hours</i> 2. 3.
<b>Country music performer</b>	1. 2. 3.	1. 2. 3.



## **b** As You Watch

Complete these sentences about Dr. Francis's two careers.

1. Dr. Francis has spent his medical career treating patients with \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Now he's singing about the pains of a \_\_\_\_\_.

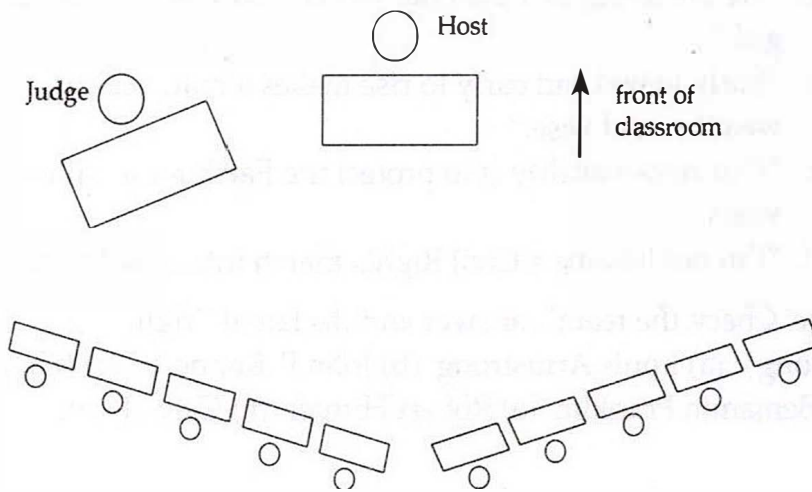
## **c** After You Watch

1. Watch the video again. Then read the following excerpts. What conclusion can you draw about Cleve Francis from each one? Check your choices.
  - a. "Things are looking bright for Cleve Francis. The 46-year-old heart doctor is undergoing a transformation to country music performer."  
 He is happy about the change.  
 He is sorry to leave his career as a cardiologist.  
 He believes that he is too old to make a career change.
  - b. "Francis's journey into country has another trail-blazing aspect. There are few Black performers in the field."  
 Dr. Francis is not unusual.  
 There are not many African-American cardiologists.  
 Most country music performers are not black.
2. In the video, Dr. Francis expresses several opinions. Do you agree or disagree or have no opinion? Explain your responses to a small group of your classmates.
  - a. "There is a link between music and medicine."  
 agree     disagree     no opinion
  - b. "If you took away the music, books, and paintings . . . life would be bare."  
 agree     disagree     no opinion
  - c. "The older you are, the better."  
 agree     disagree     no opinion



## Who Said What?

Play this game with a group of your classmates. Choose one student in the group to be the Game Host and another to be the Judge. The rest of the students will be on Team A or Team B. All students except the Host and the Judge must keep their books closed during the game.



*Host:* Follow these three steps to begin the game.

1. Write this list on the board:

Robert Louis Stevenson	English writer
Cleve Francis	American cardiologist and singer
Louis Armstrong	American jazz trumpeter
Benjamin Franklin	American philosopher
John F. Kennedy	American president
Madonna	American singer
Robert Hunter	American environmentalist





2. Read this introduction aloud to the two teams:
- “I am going to read a quotation aloud. One person on a team will have a chance to guess which of these people said it. If that person gets it wrong, a person on the other team gets a chance. Are you ready?”
3. Choose a quotation from this list. Ask Team A first, then Team B, and so on.
- “All music is folk music. I haven’t ever heard a horse sing a song.”
  - “Ask not what your country can do for you, ask what you can do for your country.”
  - “We are living in a material world, and I am a material girl.”
  - “Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy, and wise.”
  - “Our responsibility is to protect the Earth for a million years.”
  - “I’m not leading a Civil Rights march into country music.”

*Judge:* Check the team’s answer and declare it “right” or “wrong”: (a) Louis Armstrong (b) John F. Kennedy (c) Madonna (d) Benjamin Franklin (e) Robert Hunter (f) Cleve Francis



# Dictionary Page

## Learning About Word Stress

Your dictionary shows which syllable in a word is stressed. The mark showing the syllable with primary (heaviest) stress in the word *influenza* is pointed out below.

**in-flu-en-za** /,ɪnflu<sup>primary stress</sup>ˈɛnzə/ *n.* [U] a contagious illness spread by viruses: *Influenza killed millions in 1918, but now there is a shot that prevents it.*

1. Look up these words and underline the syllable with primary stress. Practice saying the words with a partner.

*Example:* influenza

antibiotic	malaria
anxiety	medicine
caffeine	mosquito
cancer	nightmare
diet	resuscitation
exercise	surgery
bacteria	tuberculosis
headache	vaccination

2. Now group the words in the chart below.

Health Problems	Causes	Solutions
<i>malaria</i>	<i>mosquito</i>	<i>medicine</i>





# Vocabulary

## a

a great deal 237  
aborigines 3  
accident 124  
active 213  
actually 100  
addictive 239  
adjust 155  
adolescents 238  
adopted 13  
advancements 145  
advantages 145  
aerobic 270  
afford 70  
agricultural 80  
alarm 211  
already 58  
alternating 191  
analyze 228  
angiograms 270  
anthropologists 155  
antibiotics 248  
anxiety 271  
apparent 239  
archaeologists 99  
architects 145  
arteries 227  
articles 12  
as well as 80  
ashore 23  
aspirin 228  
astonishing 190  
at times 32  
atmosphere 190  
attacks 212  
attractive 272  
available 58

## b

backwards 155  
bacteria 170  
balance 169  
base 3  
batteries 100  
beams 145  
beggar 13  
belongings 32  
bilingual 135  
biological 210  
blank 238  
blind 32  
blizzards 31  
block 239  
blurred 227  
bodies 32  
boiling 249  
bombs 146  
borders 12  
borrow 134  
bothers 124  
boundary 200  
brain 135  
branches 89  
broad 154  
broke down 31  
built 3  
burst 180

## c

caffeine 212  
carbon dioxide 170  
carpet 90  
carries 114  
cave 12  
centers 146  
characters 133

childhood 12  
cholesterol 269  
chosen 3  
chronic 58  
circulating 270  
civil war 13  
clear 90  
clockwise 156  
cluster 228  
colonies 169  
combined 58  
commercial 59  
complain 271  
complex 169  
concentrate 238  
concluded 260  
conductor 200  
confident 272  
confused 238  
consider 169  
consists of 69  
converted 200  
cope 180  
cough 248  
counterclockwise 156  
crash 123  
creating 170  
creatures 41  
crucial 58  
cruel 248  
crush 42  
crushed 180  
cylinder 42

## d

dawn 211  
deal with 271  
debris 180

decades 23  
deep (serious) 101  
delays 22  
demand 58  
density 42  
depends on 58  
deposits 270  
descend 42  
designing 145  
destruction 90  
details 12  
developed 59  
diagnose 261  
diameter 42  
diet 114  
dispose of 100  
diversity 43  
divided 134  
divorce 71  
domestic 80  
drawings 260

## e

earthquakes 146  
edge 31  
education 156  
effect 59  
efficiently 200  
effort 248  
elaborate 260  
elements 169  
emphasis 70  
empty 91  
enclosed 42  
encourage 271  
end up 100  
endangering 32  
epicenter 178  
epidemics 247



erupted 180  
escaped 12  
especially 79  
estimate 135  
even though 115  
evidence 259  
exactly 146  
exaggerated 269  
exhausted 32  
exist 199  
expedition 3  
experts 43  
exploration 4  
export 201  
extended 69  
extremely 31

## f

fast 212  
fatal 260  
fear 123  
feast 212  
fever 249  
fields 80  
finally 3  
financially 70  
fingerprint 190  
fire (*v.*) 248  
fits (into) 115  
floating 180  
flood 178  
forced 154  
forehead 228  
forming 133  
fresh 23  
fuel 32

## g

garbage 99  
gathered 23  
geography 22  
geothermal 181  
get along 4  
gradually 57  
grow up 69

## h

habit 238  
halfway 3  
hammer 227  
hampered 42  
harmless 123  
hazardous 100  
headache 227  
heartbeat 211  
heights 123  
helmet 42  
hemisphere 3  
herbs 271  
heroes 4  
hollow 42  
household 70  
humidity 89

## i

illiterate 80  
immigrants 145  
import 201  
improve 259  
in addition 145  
in general 125  
in good company 156  
in order to 22  
incentive 42  
included 22  
industrialization 70  
inexhaustible 199  
influenza 249  
inherit 270  
injected 249  
inland 31  
institutions 249  
instructors 125  
intense 238  
interior 3  
investigating 99

## j

jaw 238  
jet lag 210

joined 22  
journalist 12

## k

keep from 171  
kidney 261  
knocks 114

## l

laboratory 169  
lack 23  
landfills 99  
last 59  
layer 178  
leaves 90  
leeches 259  
lessen 212  
level 89  
lifestyle 228  
lifts 115  
lightning 180  
like 13  
likely 155  
limited 58  
linguists 135  
lives on 33  
logical 123  
loneliness 4  
loose 212  
loss 124

## m

magic 199  
majority 70  
married couple 69  
mate 114  
mathematicians 191  
matter 91  
maybe 115  
meaningful 133  
meanwhile 250  
melted 180  
memorize 154  
menial 260  
microscopic 190

mid- 191  
migraine 227  
migrate 211  
mild 178  
miserable 249  
mistake 32  
modern 99  
moisture 89  
moldy 260  
mosquitoes 248  
multiple 191

## n

natural resources 58  
nearly 80  
necessary 154  
needles 260  
negative 80  
nest 114  
network 41  
nightmares 238  
no longer 91  
nonrenewable 59  
nuclear 69  
nutrients 90

## o

observes 181  
occurs 190  
of course 80  
official 79  
on the other hand 100  
once in a while 114  
opportunities 70  
opposite 156  
orders 3  
ordinarily 191  
organization 30  
oxygen 91

## p

pain 227  
passed (a law) 79  
past 135

paths 90  
patient 228  
pattern 191  
periods 238  
permanent 239  
permitting 156  
personal 271  
phobia 123  
photovoltaic cell  
199  
physical 228  
physicist 170  
pick up (catch) 248  
plague 248  
planets 169  
pleasant 145  
positions 80  
positive 79  
pounding 227  
predict 57  
prefer 154  
pregnant 249  
prescribed 260  
presents 114  
pressure 42  
projects 169  
property 180  
proved 23  
provide for 32  
psychologists 125  
public 145  
published 79

## r

ran away 12  
ranged 179  
rate 135  
rather 41  
raw materials 201  
real 12  
realized 23  
reasonable 200  
rechargeable 100  
recipes 271  
recurring 228  
recyclables 100  
reduction 270  
referred to 134

region 89  
relatives 70  
relief 238  
reluctant 201  
remained 13  
remaining 90  
remarkable 261  
remind 23  
remote 13  
research 13  
respond 154  
revealed 100  
rhythm 210  
risk factor 269  
rolling 178  
roots 90  
roughly 41

## s

sanitation 260  
satellites 170  
scattered 179  
science fiction 169  
search party 4  
secret 12  
seismic 178  
seismology 181  
semiconductors  
200  
senses 154  
separate 23  
services 248  
sewerage 260  
shy 114  
signal 211  
silicon 200  
simple 191  
since 200  
situation 124  
skilled 22  
skyscraper 144  
snack 271  
snakes 114  
sneeze 248  
snoring 239  
snowflake 190  
so 191  
so far 170

sociologists 71  
solar 170  
soldiers 22  
solid-state 200  
sore 228  
sources 59  
space 146  
specialists 134  
species 42  
spiders 114  
spot 115  
stabilized 71  
stages 237  
standard of living  
58  
stare 272  
steady 228  
stealing 144  
sticks out 114  
story 145  
straight 113  
stuttering 155  
substance 270  
such as 90  
suffer 155  
supervise 250  
supplies 3  
supported 12  
surface 41  
surgery 259  
surprising 90  
surrounded 12  
swamps 3  
sweating 238  
swell 227  
system 133

## t

take care of 70  
takeoff 125  
tasks 70  
technologies 58  
temperate 210  
temperatures 13  
tension 228  
terrifying 123  
threatened 58  
through 90

throughout 79  
thunder 180  
ticks 248  
tides 211  
title 144  
tons 22  
tools 155  
traffic 124  
transparent 200  
trapped 190  
tremendously 70  
tuberculosis 248  
tunnel 124  
turn into 3

## u

uneven 31  
unfamiliar 271  
unique 180  
unsuccessful 91  
up to 191

## v

vaccination 249  
valves 270  
vibrations 178  
victims 180  
viruses 248  
vision 227  
vitamin 23  
volcano 180  
vomit 227

## w

warning 227  
waste 100  
weak 31  
whistles 114  
wide awake 210  
workforce 80

## z

zone 113

Topic	Point 1	Point 2
Education	Quality of education is important for the future of a country.	Investment in education leads to economic growth.
Environment	Climate change is a global issue that requires international cooperation.	Renewable energy sources are essential for a sustainable future.
Healthcare	Access to healthcare is a basic human right.	Preventive care can reduce the burden on the healthcare system.
Technology	Technology has revolutionized the way we live and work.	Artificial intelligence has the potential to solve complex problems.
Work	Work-life balance is crucial for mental health and productivity.	Remote work offers flexibility and can reduce commuting stress.
Travel	Travel broadens our horizons and helps us understand different cultures.	Travel can be a source of inspiration and personal growth.
Art	Art is a powerful form of expression and communication.	Art can bring people together and foster a sense of community.
Science	Science is the foundation of modern society and progress.	Space exploration has the potential to discover new worlds.
History	History teaches us about the past and helps us understand the present.	Historical landmarks are a testament to human achievement.
Language	Learning a second language can be a valuable skill in a globalized world.	Language is a key to understanding different cultures and perspectives.
Politics	Democracy is the best system of government because it allows citizens to have a say in their future.	Transparency and accountability are essential for good governance.
Philosophy	Philosophy helps us think critically and question our assumptions.	It provides a framework for understanding the world and our place in it.
Religion	Religion has shaped human civilization and provided a sense of purpose.	It can be a source of comfort and strength in difficult times.
Society	A strong sense of community is essential for a healthy society.	Volunteering and helping others can make a real difference.
Family	Family is the foundation of our lives and provides us with love and support.	Spending quality time with family is important for our well-being.
Friendship	Friends are an important part of our lives and provide us with companionship.	True friendship is rare and should be valued.
Love	Love is a powerful emotion that can change the world.	It is the greatest gift we can give and receive.
Success	Success is not just about money and power, but about achieving your goals and making a positive impact.	Hard work and perseverance are the keys to success.
Failure	Failure is a natural part of life and a learning experience.	It teaches us resilience and the importance of trying again.
Time	Time is a precious resource that we should use wisely.	It is important to take time for ourselves and the people we care about.
Money	Money is a means to an end, not an end in itself.	It is important to use money responsibly and ethically.
Power	Power can be used for good or evil, and it is important to use it wisely.	It is important to have a sense of responsibility when in a position of power.
Justice	Justice is a fundamental principle that should guide our actions.	It is important to stand up for what is right and fair.
Equality	Equality is a goal that we should strive for in our society.	It is important to treat everyone with respect and dignity.
Freedom	Freedom is a basic human right that should not be taken away.	It is important to protect our freedoms and liberties.
Responsibility	Responsibility is an important part of being a citizen and a member of a community.	It is important to be accountable for our actions and the actions of others.
Integrity	Integrity is a key characteristic of a person of honor.	It is important to be honest and to do the right thing, even when it is difficult.
Compassion	Compassion is a beautiful trait that can make the world a better place.	It is important to have empathy for others and to help those in need.
Gratitude	Gratitude is a powerful emotion that can improve our lives.	It is important to appreciate the things we have and the people who love us.
Optimism	Optimism is a positive outlook on life that can help us overcome challenges.	It is important to believe in a better future and to work towards it.
Perseverance	Perseverance is the ability to keep going despite difficulties.	It is a key trait of successful people and is essential for achieving our dreams.
Resilience	Resilience is the ability to bounce back from adversity.	It is an important skill that can help us cope with life's challenges.
Adaptability	Adaptability is the ability to change and grow in response to new circumstances.	It is a key trait of successful people and is essential for surviving in a rapidly changing world.
Curiosity	Curiosity is a natural human trait that drives us to learn and discover.	It is an important trait that can lead to great achievements.
Imagination	Imagination is the ability to create new ideas and visions.	It is a key trait of creative people and is essential for innovation.
Creativity	Creativity is the ability to use imagination to create something new.	It is an important skill that can help us solve problems and make a difference.
Innovation	Innovation is the process of creating new products, services, or ideas.	It is a key driver of economic growth and progress.
Leadership	Leadership is the ability to inspire and guide others towards a common goal.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Teamwork	Teamwork is the ability to work together towards a common goal.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Communication	Communication is the ability to express our thoughts and feelings to others.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Listening	Listening is the ability to hear and understand what others are saying.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Empathy	Empathy is the ability to understand and share the feelings of others.	It is an important trait that can help us build strong relationships.
Respect	Respect is the ability to treat others as you would like to be treated.	It is an important trait that is essential for a healthy society.
Kindness	Kindness is the ability to be nice and helpful to others.	It is an important trait that can make the world a better place.
Generosity	Generosity is the ability to give to others without expecting anything in return.	It is an important trait that can help us build strong relationships.
Humility	Humility is the ability to recognize our limitations and to value others.	It is an important trait that is essential for success in any field.
Confidence	Confidence is the ability to believe in ourselves and our abilities.	It is an important trait that is essential for success in any field.
Self-awareness	Self-awareness is the ability to understand our own thoughts and feelings.	It is an important trait that is essential for personal growth.
Emotional intelligence	Emotional intelligence is the ability to understand and manage our own emotions and the emotions of others.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Stress management	Stress management is the ability to cope with the pressures of life.	It is an important skill that is essential for maintaining good health.
Time management	Time management is the ability to use our time effectively.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Organization	Organization is the ability to arrange things in a systematic way.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Planning	Planning is the ability to think ahead and make a strategy.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Decision making	Decision making is the ability to choose between different options.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Problem solving	Problem solving is the ability to find solutions to difficult problems.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Conflict resolution	Conflict resolution is the ability to resolve disagreements peacefully.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Public speaking	Public speaking is the ability to speak in front of a group of people.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Writing	Writing is the ability to express our thoughts and feelings in written form.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Reading	Reading is the ability to understand and enjoy written text.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Research	Research is the process of finding out new information.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Analysis	Analysis is the process of breaking down complex information into smaller parts.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Synthesis	Synthesis is the process of combining different pieces of information to create a new whole.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Evaluation	Evaluation is the process of judging the value of something.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Comparison	Comparison is the process of looking at two or more things and seeing how they are similar or different.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Contrast	Contrast is the process of highlighting the differences between two or more things.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Classification	Classification is the process of putting things into groups.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Summarization	Summarization is the process of condensing a large amount of information into a shorter form.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Paraphrasing	Paraphrasing is the process of saying something in your own words.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Quoting	Quoting is the process of using someone else's words.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Referencing	Referencing is the process of giving credit to the source of your information.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Editing	Editing is the process of making changes to a piece of text.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Proofreading	Proofreading is the process of checking for errors in a piece of text.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Formatting	Formatting is the process of making a piece of text look professional.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Design	Design is the process of creating a visual representation of an idea.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Illustration	Illustration is the process of drawing a picture to represent an idea.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Diagramming	Diagramming is the process of using lines and shapes to represent a process or system.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Table making	Table making is the process of organizing information into a table.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Chart making	Chart making is the process of using lines and bars to represent data.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Graphing	Graphing is the process of plotting data on a coordinate system.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Plotting	Plotting is the process of marking points on a graph.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Labeling	Labeling is the process of putting names on the parts of a diagram or graph.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Indexing	Indexing is the process of creating a list of terms and their locations in a document.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Referencing	Referencing is the process of giving credit to the source of your information.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Quoting	Quoting is the process of using someone else's words.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Paraphrasing	Paraphrasing is the process of saying something in your own words.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Summarization	Summarization is the process of condensing a large amount of information into a shorter form.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Editing	Editing is the process of making changes to a piece of text.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Proofreading	Proofreading is the process of checking for errors in a piece of text.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Formatting	Formatting is the process of making a piece of text look professional.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Design	Design is the process of creating a visual representation of an idea.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Illustration	Illustration is the process of drawing a picture to represent an idea.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Diagramming	Diagramming is the process of using lines and shapes to represent a process or system.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Table making	Table making is the process of organizing information into a table.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Chart making	Chart making is the process of using lines and bars to represent data.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Graphing	Graphing is the process of plotting data on a coordinate system.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Plotting	Plotting is the process of marking points on a graph.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Labeling	Labeling is the process of putting names on the parts of a diagram or graph.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.
Indexing	Indexing is the process of creating a list of terms and their locations in a document.	It is an important skill that is essential for success in any field.

# Skills Index

## ACTIVITY PAGE

Adventure trail, 52  
Crossword puzzles, 109, 222  
Phrases, 165  
Who said what?, 283–284

## CHARTS

Antonyms, 183  
Cause and effect, 174, 254  
Dictionary research, 224  
Reading, 83–84  
Scanning, 233  
Synonyms, 183  
Word forms, 17, 37, 47, 66, 75, 86, 95, 118–119,  
129, 140, 150, 159, 185, 207, 232, 244, 255,  
266, 276  
Word stress, 285  
Writing, 162, 281  
Writing notes, 108

## DICTIONARY PAGE

Definitions, 53–54  
Dictionary research, 223–224  
Grammar codes, 166  
Word forms, 110  
Word stress, 285

## MAPS

Reading, 220

## PUNCTUATION

Adverbs, 129

## READING

Cause and effect, 95, 174, 254  
Charts, 83–84  
Comprehension, 7, 16, 26, 36, 38, 46, 63–64, 74,  
84, 94, 104, 118, 128, 138, 149, 159, 162, 174,  
184, 194, 204, 215, 231–232, 242, 254, 264,  
275  
Main ideas, 8, 16, 26, 36, 46, 64, 74, 84, 94, 104,  
106, 118, 128, 138, 149, 159, 174, 184, 194,  
204, 216, 232, 242, 254, 264, 275  
Maps, 220  
Paraphrasing, 94, 138, 184  
Prereading activities, 2, 10, 20, 29, 40, 56, 68, 78,  
88, 98, 112, 122, 132, 143, 153, 168, 177, 189,  
198, 209, 226, 236, 246, 258, 268  
Rereading, 27  
Scanning, 46, 85, 139, 186, 204, 233, 242

Sentences, 110

Speed, 26–27

Vocabulary, 5–6, 14–15, 24–25, 33–34, 44–45,  
60–61, 72–73, 81–82, 92–93, 102–103,  
115–117, 125–126, 135–137, 146–148,  
156–158, 171–173, 181–183, 192–193,  
202–203, 213–215, 229–230, 250–252,  
262–263, 272–274

Antonyms, 34, 103, 137, 183, 230

Context clues, 11, 21, 30, 41, 57, 69, 79, 89, 99,  
113, 123, 133, 144, 154, 169, 178, 190, 199,  
210, 227, 237, 247, 259, 269, 278–279

Synonyms, 93, 183

## SPEAKING

Discussion, 51, 163, 164, 220, 281, 282  
Partner activities, 221, 285

## TEST-TAKING SKILLS

Choosing item that does not belong, 126, 203  
Comprehension questions, 7, 16, 26, 36, 46,  
63–64, 74, 84, 94, 104, 118, 128, 138, 149,  
159, 174, 184, 194, 204, 215, 231–232, 242,  
254, 264, 275  
Fill in blanks, 5–6, 8, 9, 14–15, 17–18, 19, 24–25,  
27–28, 33–34, 37, 38, 39, 44–45, 47–48, 49,  
54, 60–61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 72–73, 75–76,  
81–82, 85, 86, 92–93, 95–97, 102–103, 105,  
115–116, 119, 120, 125–126, 129, 130,  
135–136, 140, 141, 142, 146–147, 150–151,  
156–158, 160–161, 171–173, 175–176,  
181–182, 185–187, 192–193, 195–196,  
202–203, 205–206, 207, 213–215, 216,  
217–218, 220, 221, 229–230, 233, 234,  
240–241, 243, 244–245, 250–252, 255,  
256–257, 262–263, 265, 266, 272–273,  
276–279  
Matching, 25, 34, 51, 53, 73, 82, 93, 95, 103, 116,  
137, 148, 193, 230, 241, 263, 274  
Multiple-choice questions, 8, 15, 16, 26, 35, 36,  
46, 62–63, 83–84, 103–104, 121, 127,  
148–149, 173, 203–204, 221, 230–231, 253,  
278–279, 282  
Sentence completion, 51, 110, 166, 282  
Sequencing, 187, 218  
Short-answer questions, 46, 85, 187, 194, 242  
True/false/not enough information questions,  
25, 45, 73–74, 93–94, 117, 137, 158, 183–184,  
215, 241–242, 264, 274



True/false questions, 7, 107

## TOPICS

Explorers, 1–54

Bering: Bering Strait, 20–28

Burke and Wills: Australia, 2–9

David-Neel: Tibet, 10–19

Ocean exploration, 40–49

Scott: South Pole, 29–39

Fear of flying, 122–131

Languages and language diversity, 132–142

Left-handedness, 153–162

Medicine and health, 225–285

Advances in medicine, 258–267

Cholesterol and heart disease, 268–280

Headaches, 226–235

Health care and epidemics, 246–257

Sleep and dreams, 236–245

Roadrunners, 112–121

Science, 167–224

Biological clocks, 209–219

Biospheres in space, 168–176

Earthquakes, 177–188

Photovoltaic cells, 198–208

Snow and hail, 189–197

Skyscrapers, 143–152

World issues, 55–108

Families, 68–77

Garbage Project, 98–106

Population growth, 56–67

Rain forests, 88–97

Women, 78–87

## VIEWING

Partner activities, 50, 107, 163

Video highlights, 50–51, 107–108, 163–164,  
220–221, 281–282

## WORD STUDY

Active and passive sentences, 139

Adjectives, 17–18, 37, 47, 65, 66, 75, 86, 95–96,  
108, 110, 119, 129, 140, 159–160, 185–186,  
207, 232–233, 244–245, 255, 266, 276

Adjectives following verbs, 235

-*ed* form, 216

-*ing* form, 216

Participles, 65

Sentence forms, 206

Suffixes, 75

Adverbs, 17–18, 37, 47, 66, 86, 95–96, 119, 140,  
159–160, 185–186, 207, 232–233, 244–245,  
255, 266, 276

-*ly* ending, 128

Punctuation, 129

Articles, 9, 18, 48–49, 67, 76, 85–86, 96–97, 130,  
141, 151, 175–176, 195–196, 234, 256–257

Collocations, 39

Compound words, 19, 105, 196, 265

Connecting words

*after*, 161, 243

*although*, 243

*and*, 106, 130

*before*, 161, 243

*but*, 87, 130

*even though*, 120, 130, 218

*since*, 161, 218, 243

*until*, 161, 218

*when*, 161

Nouns, 17–18, 36–37, 47, 66, 86, 95–96, 110, 118,  
119, 129, 140, 159–160, 175, 185–186, 207,  
232–233, 244–245, 255, 266, 276

Noun substitutes, 96, 141, 175, 234

Suffixes, 47

Prefixes

Negative prefixes, 195

*semi-*, 217

Verbs, 150

Prepositions, 28, 48, 120, 217–218, 265

Sentence parts, 36

Suffixes

Adjectives, 75

Nouns, 47

Verbs, 150

Verbs, 17–18, 27, 37, 47, 66, 86, 95–96, 110, 119,  
129, 140, 159–160, 175, 185–186, 207,  
232–233, 244–245, 255, 266, 276

Adjectives following verbs, 235

Irregular verbs, 65, 277–278

Prefixes, 150

Regular verbs, 166

Suffixes, 150

Two-word verbs, 8, 38, 53–54, 64, 105, 142,  
151, 186–187, 205, 256, 265, 278

## WRITING

Charts, 108, 162, 174, 183, 224, 233, 254, 281, 285

Compositions, 9, 19, 28, 39, 49, 67, 77, 87, 97,  
106, 121, 131, 142, 152, 162, 176, 188, 197,  
208, 219, 235, 245, 257, 267, 280

Guided writing, 9, 19, 28, 39, 49, 67, 77, 87, 97,  
106, 121, 131, 142, 152, 162, 176, 188, 197,  
208, 219, 235, 245, 257, 267, 280

Lists, 163

Paraphrasing, 94, 138, 184

Reasons for statements, 208

Sentences, 7, 51, 64, 74, 84, 87, 94, 104, 106, 108,  
128, 131, 138, 149, 159, 165, 174, 184, 194,  
197, 204, 216, 232, 235, 242, 254, 257, 264,  
275

Summarizing, 131, 152, 187, 196, 257, 267, 279





# Reading & Vocabulary Development Series

## Facts & Figures

Text.....	1-4130-0445-8
Audio CD.....	1-4130-1332-5
Audio Tape.....	1-4130-1333-3
CNN® Video for Books 1 & 2.....	1-4130-0610-8
CNN® DVD for Books 1 & 2.....	1-4130-1587-5
Answer Key and Video Transcript for Books 1 & 2.....	1-4130-0609-4
Assessment CD-ROM with <i>ExamView® Pro</i> for Books 1 & 2.....	1-4130-0613-2

## Thoughts & Notions

Text.....	1-4130-0446-6
Audio CD.....	1-4130-1334-1
Audio Tape.....	1-4130-1335-X
CNN® Video for Books 1 & 2.....	1-4130-0610-8
CNN® DVD for Books 1 & 2.....	1-4130-1587-5
Answer Key and Video Transcript for Books 1 & 2.....	1-4130-0609-4
Assessment CD-ROM with <i>ExamView® Pro</i> for Books 1 & 2.....	1-4130-0613-2

## Cause & Effect

Text.....	1-4130-0447-4
Audio CD.....	1-4130-1330-9
Audio Tape.....	1-4130-1331-7
CNN® Video for Books 3 & 4.....	1-4130-0611-6
CNN® DVD for Books 3 & 4.....	1-4130-1588-3
Answer Key and Video Transcript for Books 3 & 4.....	1-4130-0612-4
Assessment CD-ROM with <i>ExamView® Pro</i> for Books 3 & 4.....	1-4130-1327-9

## Concepts & Comments **NEW LEVEL!**

Text.....	1-4130-0448-2
Audio CD.....	1-4130-1328-7
Audio Tape.....	1-4130-1329-5
CNN® Video for Books 3 & 4.....	1-4130-0611-6
CNN® DVD for Books 3 & 4.....	1-4130-1588-3
Answer Key and Video Transcript for Books 3 & 4.....	1-4130-0612-4
Assessment CD-ROM with <i>ExamView® Pro</i> for Books 3 & 4.....	1-4130-1327-9

[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

### ELT INTERNATIONAL CONTACT INFORMATION

#### Asia

##### (Including Japan and India)

Thomson Learning  
5 Shenton Way #01-01  
UIC Building  
Singapore 068808  
Tel: 65-6410-1200  
Fax: 65-6410-1208  
info@thomsonlearning.com.sg  
www.thomsonlearningasia.com

#### Australia/New Zealand

Thomson Learning  
102 Dodds Street  
Southbank, Victoria  
Australia 3006  
Tel: 03-9685-4111  
Fax: 03-9685-4199  
Toll Free 1-800-654-831  
www.thomsonlearning.com.au

#### Canada

Thomson Nelson  
1120 Birchmount Road  
Toronto, Ontario M1K 5G4  
Tel: 416-752-9100  
Fax: 416-752-9646  
www.nelson.com

#### Latin America

Thomson Learning  
Seneca, 53  
Colonia Polanco  
11560 México D.F.  
México  
Tel: 52-55-5281-2906  
Fax: 52-55-5281-2656  
www.thomsonlearning.com.mx

#### UK/Europe/Middle

##### East/Africa

Thomson Learning  
High Holborn House  
50/51 Bedford Row  
London, WC1R 4LR  
United Kingdom  
Tel: 44-207-067-2500  
Fax: 44-207-067-2600  
www.thomsonlearning.co.uk

#### Spain/Portugal

Thomson Paraninfo  
Calle Magallanes, 25  
28015 Madrid  
Spain  
Tel: 34-91-446-3350  
Fax: 34-91-445-6218  
www.paraninfo.es

For product information in  
the United States, desk or  
examination copy requests,  
or for the name of the  
Heinle Specialist in your  
area, call toll-free:

**877-633-3375**

or send requests to:

Thomson/Heinle  
25 Thomson Place  
Boston, MA 02210  
Fax: (617) 289-7844

Examination and desk copy  
requests must be on school  
letterhead and include:

- Name
- School
- School Address with Zip Code
- Phone Number
- Enrollment
- Decision Date
- Book Title and ISBN

Please allow 3–4 weeks for  
delivery.

For information about:

- Placing an order
- Prices
- Availability of material
- Delivery

Call: **800-354-9706**

Send orders to:

TL Distribution Center  
Attn: Order Fulfillment  
10650 Toebben Drive  
Independence, KY 41051

PUBNET

Easy Link: 6290-5841

elt.thomson.com



# Cause & Effect

FOURTH EDITION

Patricia Ackert | Linda Lee

The new edition of this popular series helps students develop reading skills and systematically increase their active vocabulary from 1,300 to 2,000 words.

- **PROVEN** systematic pedagogy builds students' reading comprehension.
- **NEW** and **UPDATED** thematic readings (five per unit) recycle vocabulary, sentence structure, and content knowledge.
- **UPDATED** and carefully designed pre- and post-reading activities expand students' skills.
- **UPDATED** dictionary work builds students' vocabulary.
- **NEW** Assessment CD-ROM with *ExamView® Pro* allows instructors to quickly and easily create custom tests and quizzes.
- Audio components contain the readings.
- CNN® clips expand vocabulary and provide authentic input.
- Online activities!  
[elt.thomson.com/readingandvocabulary](http://elt.thomson.com/readingandvocabulary)

© 2013 Thomson Learning, Inc.

## Cause & Effect

Text .....	1-4130-0447-4
Audio CD .....	1-4130-1330-9
Audio Tape .....	1-4130-1331-7
CNN® Video for Books 3 & 4 .....	1-4130-0611-6
CNN® DVD for Books 3 & 4 .....	1-4130-1588-3
Answer Key and Video Transcript for Books 3 & 4 .....	1-4130-0612-4
Assessment CD-ROM with <i>ExamView® Pro</i> for Books 3 & 4 .....	1-4130-1327-9

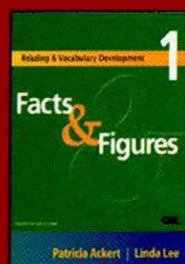
Thomson ELT, a part of the Thomson Company, is a leading provider of materials for English Language teaching and learning throughout the world.

**THOMSON**  
Learning

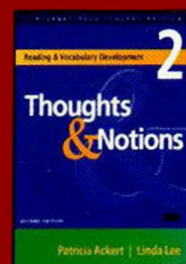
Visit Thomson online at [elt.thomson.com](http://elt.thomson.com)

For your lifelong learning needs: [www.thomson.com/learning](http://www.thomson.com/learning)

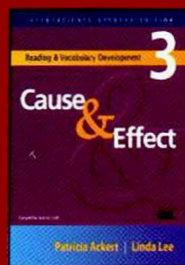
Discover the entire *Reading & Vocabulary Development* series



Facts & Figures  
1-4130-0445-8



Thoughts & Notions  
1-4130-0446-6



Cause & Effect  
1-4130-0447-4



Concepts & Comments  
1-4130-0448-2

International Student Edition